

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM S-3
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

ELECTROCORE, INC.

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Delaware
(State or Other Jurisdiction of
Incorporation)

20-3454976
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)

**150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, New Jersey 07920
(973) 290-0097**

(Address, Including Zip Code and Telephone Number, Including Area Code, of Registrant's Principal Executive Offices)

**Francis R. Amato, Chief Executive Officer
electroCore, Inc.
150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, New Jersey 07920
(973) 290-0097**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:

**John L. Cleary, II, Esq.
Ira L. Kotel, Esq.
Dentons US LLP
1221 Avenue of the Americas
New York, New York 10020
(212) 768-6700**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to public: From time to time or at one time after this registration statement becomes effective in light of market conditions and other factors.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Emerging growth company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title Of Each Class Of Securities To Be Registered	Amount To Be Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Unit	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Amount Of Registration Fee
Debt Securities	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
Preferred Stock, par value \$.001 per share	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
Common Stock, par value \$.001 per share	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
Warrants	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
Units	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
Rights	(1)(2)	(1)(2)	(2)(3)	
TOTAL	\$50,000,000(3)		\$50,000,000	\$6,060(4)

- (1) There are being registered under this registration statement such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock of the registrant, such indeterminate number of warrants of the registrant and such indeterminate principal amount of debt securities of the registrant, as shall have an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$50,000,000. There are being registered under this registration statement such indeterminate number of each identified class of the identified securities as may be issued upon conversion, exchange, or exercise of any other securities that provide for such conversion, exchange or exercise, up to a proposed maximum offering price of \$50,000,000. In addition, pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act, the shares of common stock and preferred stock being registered hereunder include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock as may be issuable with respect to the shares being registered hereunder as a result of stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the debt securities registered pursuant to this registration statement shall include such greater principal amount as shall result in an amount to be registered hereunder that equals the aggregate initial offering price, but in no event shall the initial public offering price of securities registered hereunder exceed \$50,000,000 less the aggregate dollar amount of all securities previously issued hereunder, or the equivalent thereof in one or more foreign currencies. Any securities registered under this registration statement may be sold separately or as units with other securities registered under this registration statement. The proposed maximum initial offering prices per unit will be determined, from time to time, by the registrant in connection with the issuance by the registrant of the securities registered under this registration statement.
- (2) Not specified with respect to each class of securities being registered under this registration statement pursuant to General Instruction II.D. of Form S-3 under the Securities Act.
- (3) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee in accordance with Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act. No additional consideration will be received for common stock, preferred stock or debt securities that are issued upon conversion into or exchange for or exercise of preferred stock or debt securities. The proposed maximum aggregate offering price per class of security will be determined from time to time by the registrant in connection with the issuance by the registrant of the securities registered hereunder and is not specified as to each class of security pursuant to General Instruction II.D of Form S-3 under the Securities Act.
- (4) Pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act, the registration fee is calculated on the maximum offering price of all securities listed, and the table does not specify information specific to each class about the amount to be registered.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. The Registrant may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where an offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED JULY 15, 2019

\$50,000,000



electroCore, Inc.

**Debt Securities
Preferred Stock
Common Stock
Warrants
Rights
Units**

From time to time, we may offer and sell up to an aggregate of \$50,000,000 of any combination of the securities described in this prospectus, either individually or in combination. We may also offer common stock or preferred stock upon conversion of debt securities, common stock upon conversion of preferred stock, or common stock, preferred stock or debt securities upon the exercise of warrants.

When we decide to sell particular securities, we will provide you with the specific terms and the offering price of the securities we are then offering in one or more prospectus supplements to this prospectus. The prospectus supplement may add to, change or update information contained in this prospectus. The prospectus supplement may also contain important information about U.S. federal income tax consequences. You should carefully read this prospectus, together with any prospectus supplements and information incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplements, before you decide to invest. **This prospectus may not be used to offer or sell any securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.**

Our common stock is quoted on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the trading symbol "ECOR." Any common stock sold pursuant to this prospectus or any prospectus supplement will be listed on that exchange, subject to official notice of issuance. Each prospectus supplement to this prospectus will contain information, where applicable, as to any other listing on any national securities exchange of the securities covered by the prospectus supplement.

We may offer and sell the securities described in this prospectus to or through one or more underwriters, dealers or agents, or directly to purchasers on an immediate, continuous or delayed basis. The names of any underwriters, dealers or agents involved in the sale of any securities, the specific manner in which they may be offered and any applicable commissions or discounts will be set forth in an accompanying prospectus supplement covering the sales of those securities.

Investing in our securities involves significant risks. See "[Risk Factors](#)" beginning on page 5.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is _____, 2019.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	1
SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	1
ABOUT THE COMPANY	2
RISK FACTORS	5
USE OF PROCEEDS	5
RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES	5
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	6
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES	8
DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK	17
DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK	19
DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS	24
DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS	26
DESCRIPTION OF UNITS	27
EXPERTS	29
LEGAL MATTERS	29
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	29
INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE	30

This prospectus is part of a registration statement the Company filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission. You should rely only on the information the Company has provided or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement. The Company has not authorized anyone to provide you with additional or different information. The Company is not making an offer of these securities in any state where the offer is not permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of the prospectus.

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) utilizing a “shelf” registration process or continuous offering process, which allows the Company to offer and sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings. Using this prospectus, we may offer up to a total dollar amount of \$50,000,000 of these securities.

This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we sell securities pursuant to this registration statement and the prospectus contained herein, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. That prospectus supplement may include additional risk factors about us and the terms of that particular offering. Prospectus supplements may also add to, update or change the information contained in this prospectus. To the extent that any statement that we make in a prospectus supplement is inconsistent with statements made in this prospectus, the statements made in this prospectus will be deemed modified or superseded by those made in such prospectus supplement. In addition, as described in the section entitled “Where You Can Find More Information,” we have filed and plan to continue to file other documents with the SEC that contain information about our business. Before you decide whether to invest in any of these securities, you should read this prospectus, the prospectus supplement that further describes the offering of these securities and the information we file with the SEC.

In this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, unless otherwise stated or the context otherwise indicates, references to “ECOR,” “electroCore,” “the Company,” “we,” “us,” “our” and similar references refer to electroCore, Inc., a Delaware corporation.

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and certain information incorporated herein by reference contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. The statements contained in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Forward-looking statements are often identified by the use of words such as, but not limited to, “anticipate,” “believe,” “can,” “continue,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “project,” “seek,” “should,” “strategy,” “target,” “will,” “would” and similar expressions or variations intended to identify forward-looking statements. These statements are based on the beliefs and assumptions of our management based on information currently available to management. Such forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and other important factors that could cause actual results and the timing of certain events to differ materially from future results expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements.

Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include, but are not limited to, (i) those included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K dated December 31, 2018, (ii) those contained in other SEC reports described under “Risk Factors,” (iii) those described elsewhere in this prospectus, and (iv) other factors that we may publicly disclose from time to time. Furthermore, such forward-looking statements speak only as of the date made. Except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date of such statements.

ABOUT THE COMPANY

Business Overview

We are a commercial-stage bioelectronic medicine company with a proprietary non-invasive vagus nerve stimulation, or nVNS, therapy. nVNS is a platform therapy that modulates neurotransmitters and immune function through its pharmacologic effects on both the peripheral and central nervous systems. We are initially focused on neurology and rheumatology, and our therapy, gammaCore, is cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, for use by adults for the following three neurology indications: the acute treatment of pain associated with each of migraine and episodic cluster headache; and the prevention of cluster headaches. In neurology, we intend to pursue further label expansions to include prevention of migraine. We have also initiated clinical trials to pursue label expansions into migraine in adolescents and post-traumatic headache. These trials are currently on hold pending further developments in the Company's business plan, as described below in "*Recent Developments*." Finally, we are also engaging in clinical development for potential new labeling claims in rheumatology, with an investigator initiated trial focusing on rheumatoid arthritis.

gammaCore is the first FDA-cleared, prescription-only non-invasive VNS therapy. Historically, vagus nerve stimulation or VNS, required a highly invasive surgical procedure to permanently implant a costly medical device. These limitations prevented VNS from being used, other than for the most severe patients. Our lead product, gammaCore Sapphire, is a proprietary, simple-to-use handheld delivery system intended for multi-year use prescribed on a monthly basis, and is both rechargeable and reloadable via individualized radio-frequency identification, or RFID, cards. gammaCore Sapphire permits patients to self-administer discrete doses of nVNS on an as-needed basis for acute treatment, or at regular intervals for prevention therapy.

Non-invasive delivery of VNS or nVNS by our gammaCore Sapphire is enabled by a proprietary high-frequency burst waveform that safely and comfortably passes through the skin and stimulates targeted A-fibers in the vagus nerve. Multiple published studies suggest that VNS works through the modulation of neurotransmitters, and has a measurable pharmacologic effect similar to several classes of commonly prescribed medications, including selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors, and GABA analogues. Research also indicates that VNS, including gammaCore, moderates the inflammatory response producing a measurable reduction in inflammatory cytokine production.

In January 2018, the FDA cleared our gammaCore therapy for our lead indication: the acute treatment of migraine in adults. Migraine is a debilitating primary headache condition that affects approximately 12% of the adult population. Some reports suggest that up to 60% of migraine sufferers are dissatisfied with, or have contraindications to, the current standard of care treatments for migraine, such as triptan medications. Published reports suggest that the total addressable market for the acute treatment of migraine in the United States in 2019 will be approximately \$4 billion. In April 2017, the FDA cleared our gammaCore therapy for the acute treatment of cluster headache, or CH, and in December 2018, the FDA cleared our therapy for the prevention of CH. CH is an extremely painful form of headache affecting approximately 350,000 people in the United States. Prior to gammaCore, injectable sumatriptan was the only FDA-approved, commercially available acute CH treatment, and there was no FDA approved therapy for the prevention of CH. According to a 2016 market research survey, 87% of respondents reported dissatisfaction with the then-available treatment options for managing CH. We estimate the total addressable U.S. market for the acute treatment of these CH patients in 2019 is approximately \$400 million.

The first three clearances of our gammaCore therapy were facilitated by the FDA's creation of a new regulatory category: External Vagus Nerve Stimulator for Headache (21 CFR 882-5892). Based on this category's description, we anticipate additional label expansions will be possible through the pathway under Section 510(k) of the Federal Drug and Cosmetic Act, and are pursuing clinical programs to support label expansion filings for migraine prevention, migraine in adolescents, and the treatment of post-traumatic headache.

Our Therapy Delivery Platform

Our gammaCore therapy is the first and only treatment that non-invasively activates the therapeutically relevant fibers in the cervical trunk of the vagus nerve, delivered in discrete two-minute doses, using proprietary signals that are capable of passing through skin while minimizing the activation of skin pain receptors.

Our therapy is prescription-only, and like medications delivered by metered-dose inhalers, patients self-administer discrete doses using a handheld unit. gammaCore Sapphire is a non-disposable, rechargeable and reloadable option for patients, with the therapy being dispensed through a prescription from a specialty pharmacy. After the initial prescription is filled, access to therapy is refilled monthly through the input of a unique, prescription-only authorization code. This code is currently delivered in the form of an RFID card, dispensed by mail by our specialty pharmacy distribution partner. In the future this refill may be dispensed directly through the internet using Bluetooth technology.

The prior iteration of the gammaCore delivery device was not reloadable and rechargeable, and was supplanted by the gammaCore Sapphire during the fourth quarter of 2018. While we do not intend to market the non-reloadable, disposable version of our gammaCore product in markets where the gammaCore Sapphire is launched, in select cases, we may continue to use the prior gammaCore product, such as in clinical studies where a rechargeable version is not necessary. Certain payers, such as the Veterans Administration and the Department of Defense, may also continue to use the prior iteration of the gammaCore delivery device.

Recent Developments

On May 29, 2019, the Company announced significant adjustments to the deployment of personnel and resources across the organization. The effort was intended to focus the Company on currently available and near-term revenue opportunities and on clinical programs specifically designed to expand the gammaCore product labeling. To achieve this goal, the Company has right-sized its organizational structure, including its field sales force and clinical operations. The Company is focusing its resources on high-value geographic and other sales territories where the current prescriber base and regional payer coverage are most concentrated including:

- (i) regional payers, some of whom have recently amended their policies to permit reimbursement for electroCore's principal offering, gammaCore, who have covered lives that are highly concentrated in specific targeted geographic regions;
- (ii) the Veterans Administration and Department of Defense, covered under the Federal Supply Schedule contract secured by the Company in December 2018, which has a significant patient population that can benefit from gammaCore;
- (iii) the United Kingdom, where a recent award from the Innovative Technology Program of the National Health Service ("NHS") offers the potential to generate revenue from the treatment of cluster headache, by allowing for additional reimbursement of gammaCore by NHS. In addition, the United Kingdom's National Institute for Health and Care Excellence ("NICE") recently issued draft guidance regarding the use of gammaCore for cluster headache. The draft guidance highlights the potential economic savings of gammaCore and its potential to effectively treat cluster headache for approximately 25,000 people in the United Kingdom. NICE will solicit comments from stakeholders before issuing final guidance, which is expected to be published on or about November 22, 2019; and
- (iv) other potential revenue opportunities in the pain management field.

The Company has also postponed certain clinical trials in indications that are more exploratory in nature and is concentrating its resources on opportunities to broaden the gammaCore label beyond its three currently approved

[Table of Contents](#)

indications. These include indications such as migraine prevention and other headache conditions as well as large market diseases of inflammation, such as rheumatoid arthritis. The Company has also reduced its medical affairs activities consistent with its revised commercial plan.

On May 31, 2019, we entered into a separation and release agreement with Joseph P. Errico (the “Errico Agreement”), our former Chief Science & Strategy Officer. The Errico Agreement became effective on June 8, 2019. Mr. Errico continues to serve on our board of directors (the “Board”), and has agreed to provide, upon request, up to 10 hours per month of reasonable transition services for no additional compensation.

On June 10, 2019, Frank Amato, our Chief Executive Officer, offered his resignation to the Board. We entered into a Separation Agreement with Mr. Amato, pursuant to which he will remain as Chief Executive Officer and a member of the Board until the earlier of such time as a new chief executive officer is recruited and September 30, 2019, subject to extension by mutual agreement.

Trademark Notice

The electroCore logo, gammaCore and other trademarks of electroCore, Inc. appearing in this prospectus are the property of electroCore, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks and trade names in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners. We have omitted the ® and ™ designations, as applicable, for the trademarks used in this prospectus.

RISK FACTORS

Before you invest in any of the Company's securities, in addition to the other information in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, you should carefully consider (i) the risk factors contained in the Company's most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, which are incorporated by reference into this prospectus, (ii) all of the other information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and (iii) the applicable prospectus supplement, as the same may be updated from time to time by the Company's future filings under the Exchange Act.

The risks and uncertainties described herein are not the only ones facing the Company. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to the Company or that the Company currently deems immaterial may also impair its business or operations. Any adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition or operating results could result in a decline in the value of the securities and the loss of all or part of your investment. The prospectus supplement applicable to each series of securities the Company offers may contain a discussion of additional risks applicable to an investment in the Company and the securities the Company is offering under that prospectus supplement.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, the Company will use the net proceeds from the sale of securities offered by this prospectus for working capital and general corporate purposes. As of the date of this prospectus supplement, the Company has not identified any specific and material proposed uses of the anticipated proceeds.

Our expected use of net proceeds from the sale of securities offered by this prospectus represents our current intentions based upon our plans and business condition. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of any offering or the amounts that we will actually spend on the uses set forth above. The amounts and timing of our actual use of the net proceeds will vary depending on numerous factors, including the factors described under the heading "Risk Factors" in this prospectus. As a result, management will have broad discretion in its application of the net proceeds, and investors will be relying on our judgment in such application.

Pending use of net proceeds from the sale of securities offered by this prospectus, we may invest in short- and intermediate-term interest-bearing obligations, investment-grade instruments, certificates of deposit or direct or guaranteed obligations of the U.S. government.

RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES

If the Company offers debt securities and/or preference equity securities under this prospectus, then the Company will, if required at that time, provide a ratio of earnings to fixed charges and/or ratio of combined fixed charges and preference dividends to earnings, respectively, in the applicable prospectus supplement for such offering.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

The Company may sell the securities being offered by it in this prospectus pursuant to underwritten public offerings, negotiated transactions, block trades or any combination of such methods. The Company may sell the securities to or through underwriters, dealers, agents or directly to one or more purchasers. The Company and its agents reserve the right to accept and to reject, in whole or in part, any proposed purchase of securities. A prospectus supplement or post-effective amendment, which the Company will file each time the Company effects an offering of any securities, will provide the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents, if any, involved in the sale of such securities, and any applicable fees, commissions, or discounts to which such persons shall be entitled to in connection with such offering.

The Company and its agents, dealers and underwriters, as applicable, may sell the securities being offered by the Company in this prospectus from time to time in one or more transactions at:

- a fixed price or prices, which may be changed;
- market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- prices related to such prevailing market prices;
- varying prices determined at the time of sale; or
- negotiated prices.

The Company may determine the price or other terms of the securities offered under this prospectus by use of an electronic auction. The Company will describe how any auction will determine the price or any other terms, how potential investors may participate in the auction and the nature of the underwriters' obligations in the applicable prospectus supplement or amendment.

The Company may solicit directly offers to purchase securities. The Company may also designate agents from time to time to solicit offers to purchase securities. Any agent that the Company designates, who may be deemed to be an underwriter as such term is defined in the Securities Act, may then resell such securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by such agent at the time of resale.

The Company may engage in at the market offerings of the Company's common stock. An at the market offering is an offering of the Company's common stock at other than a fixed price, and is conducted to or through a market maker. The Company shall name any underwriter that the Company engages for an at the market offering in a post-effective amendment to the registration statement containing this prospectus. In the related prospectus supplement, the Company shall also describe any additional details of the Company's arrangement with such underwriter, including commissions or fees paid or discounts offered by the Company, and whether such underwriter is acting as principal or agent.

If the Company uses underwriters to sell securities, the Company will enter into an underwriting agreement with the underwriters at the time of the sale to them, which agreement shall be filed as an exhibit to the related prospectus supplement. Underwriters may also receive commissions from purchasers of the securities. Underwriters may also use dealers to sell securities. In such an event, the dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents.

Under agreements that they may enter into with the Company, underwriters, dealers, agents and other persons may be entitled to (i) indemnification by the Company against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act or (ii) contribution with respect to payments which they may be required to make in respect of such liabilities. Underwriters and agents may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, the Company in the ordinary course of business.

Table of Contents

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the Company may authorize underwriters, dealers or other persons to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase the securities offered by the Company under this prospectus pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date or dates. The obligations of any purchaser under these contracts will be subject only to those conditions described in the applicable prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth the price to be paid for securities pursuant to those contracts and the commissions payable for solicitation of the contracts.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing and syndicate short covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M of the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions involve bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Syndicate short covering transactions involve purchases of securities in the open market after the distribution has been completed in order to cover syndicate short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim selling concessions from dealers when the securities originally sold by such dealers are purchased in covering transactions to cover syndicate short positions. These transactions may cause the price of the securities sold in an offering to be higher than it would otherwise be. These transactions, if commenced, may be discontinued by the underwriters at any time.

The Company's common stock is quoted on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the trading symbol "ECOR." The other securities are not listed on any securities exchange or other stock market and, unless the Company states otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the Company does not intend to apply for listing of the other securities on any securities exchange or other stock market. Any underwriters to whom the Company sells securities for public offering and sale may make a market in the securities that they purchase, but the underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. Accordingly, the Company gives you no assurance as to the development or liquidity of any trading market for the securities.

The anticipated date of delivery of the securities offered hereby will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to each offering.

In order to comply with certain state securities laws, if applicable, the securities may be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers. In certain states, the securities may not be sold unless the securities have been registered or qualified for sale in such state or an exemption from regulation or qualification is available and is complied with. Sales of securities must also be made by the Company in compliance with all other applicable state securities laws and regulations.

The Company shall pay all expenses of the registration of the securities.

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

The following description, together with the additional information the Company includes in any applicable prospectus supplements, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the debt securities that the Company may offer under this prospectus. While the terms the Company has summarized below will apply generally to any future debt securities the Company may offer under this prospectus, the Company will describe the particular terms of any debt securities that the Company may offer in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement. The terms of any debt securities the Company offers under a prospectus supplement may differ from the terms described below. However, no prospectus supplement shall fundamentally change the terms that are set forth in this prospectus or offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of its effectiveness. As of June 30, 2019, the Company had no outstanding indebtedness.

The Company will issue the senior debt securities under the senior indenture that the Company will enter into with the trustee named in the senior indenture. The Company will issue the subordinated debt securities under the subordinated indenture that the Company will enter into with the trustee named in the subordinated indenture. The Company has filed forms of these documents as exhibits to the registration statement which includes this prospectus. The Company uses the term “indentures” in this prospectus to refer to both the senior indenture and the subordinated indenture.

The indentures will be qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “Trust Indenture Act”). The Company uses the term “trustee” to refer to either the senior trustee or the subordinated trustee, as applicable.

The following summaries of material provisions of the senior debt securities, the subordinated debt securities and the indentures are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the indenture applicable to a particular series of debt securities. Except as the Company may otherwise indicate, the terms of the senior indenture and the subordinated indenture are identical.

General

Debt securities may be issued in separate series without limitation as to aggregate principal amount. The Company may specify a maximum aggregate principal amount for the debt securities of any series.

The Company is not limited as to the amount of debt securities it may issue under the indentures. The prospectus supplement will set forth:

- whether the debt securities will be senior or subordinated;
- the offering price;
- the title;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount;
- the person who shall be entitled to receive interest, if other than the record holder on the record date;
- the date the principal will be payable;
- the interest rate, if any, the date interest will accrue, the interest payment dates and the regular record dates;
- the place where payments may be made;
- any mandatory or optional redemption provisions;
- if applicable, the method for determining how the principal, premium, if any, or interest will be calculated by reference to an index or formula;

Table of Contents

- if other than U.S. currency, the currency or currency units in which principal, premium, if any, or interest will be payable and whether the Company or the holder may elect payment to be made in a different currency;
- the portion of the principal amount that will be payable upon acceleration of stated maturity, if other than the entire principal amount;
- if the principal amount payable at stated maturity will not be determinable as of any date prior to stated maturity, the amount which will be deemed to be the principal amount;
- any defeasance provisions if different from those described below under “Satisfaction and Discharge; Defeasance;”
- any conversion or exchange provisions;
- any obligation to redeem or purchase the debt securities pursuant to a sinking fund;
- whether the debt securities will be issuable in the form of a global security;
- any subordination provisions, if different from those described below under “Subordinated Debt Securities;”
- any deletions of, or changes or additions to, the events of default or covenants; and
- any other specific terms of such debt securities.

Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement:

- the debt securities will be registered debt securities; and
- registered debt securities denominated in U.S. dollars will be issued in denominations of \$1,000 or an integral multiple of \$1,000.

Debt securities may be sold at a substantial discount below their stated principal amount, bearing no interest or interest at a rate which at the time of issuance is below market rates.

Exchange and Transfer

Debt securities may be transferred or exchanged at the office of the security registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by the Company.

The Company will not impose a service charge for any transfer or exchange, but the Company may require holders to pay any tax or other governmental charges associated with any transfer or exchange.

In the event of any potential redemption of debt securities of any series, the Company will not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange, any debt security of that series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing; or
- register the transfer of or exchange any debt security of that series selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion being redeemed in part.

The Company may initially appoint the trustee as the security registrar. Any transfer agent, in addition to the security registrar, initially designated by the Company will be named in the prospectus supplement. The Company may designate additional transfer agents or change transfer agents or change the office of the transfer agent. However, the Company will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of each series.

Global Securities

The debt securities of any series may be represented, in whole or in part, by one or more global securities. Each global security will:

- be registered in the name of a depositary that the Company will identify in a prospectus supplement;
- be deposited with the depositary or nominee or custodian; and
- bear any required legends.

No global security may be exchanged in whole or in part for debt securities registered in the name of any person other than the depositary or any nominee unless:

- the depositary has notified the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as depositary or has ceased to be qualified to act as depositary;
- an event of default is continuing; or
- any other circumstances described in a prospectus supplement.

As long as the depositary, or its nominee, is the registered owner of a global security, the depositary or nominee will be considered the sole owner and holder of the debt securities represented by the global security for all purposes under the indenture. Except in the above limited circumstances, owners of beneficial interests in a global security:

- will not be entitled to have the debt securities registered in their names,
- will not be entitled to physical delivery of certificated debt securities, and
- will not be considered to be holders of those debt securities under the indentures.

Payments on a global security will be made to the depositary or its nominee as the holder of the global security. Some jurisdictions have laws that require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form. These laws may impair the ability to transfer beneficial interests in a global security.

Institutions that have accounts with the depositary or its nominee are referred to as “participants.” Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be limited to participants and to persons that may hold beneficial interests through participants. The depositary will credit, on its book-entry registration and transfer system, the respective principal amounts of debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of its participants.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be shown on and effected through records maintained by the depositary, with respect to participants’ interests, or any participant, with respect to interests of persons held by participants on their behalf.

Payments, transfers and exchanges relating to beneficial interests in a global security will be subject to policies and procedures of the depositary.

The depositary policies and procedures may change from time to time. Neither the Company nor the trustee will have any responsibility or liability for the depositary’s or any participant’s records with respect to beneficial interests in a global security.

Payment and Paying Agent

The provisions of this paragraph will apply to debt securities unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement. Payment of interest on a debt security on any interest payment date will be made to the person in

[Table of Contents](#)

whose name the debt security is registered at the close of business on the regular record date. Payment on debt securities of a particular series will be payable at the office of a paying agent or paying agents designated by the Company. However, at the Company's option, the Company may pay interest by mailing a check to the record holder. The corporate trust office initially will be designated as the Company's sole paying agent.

The Company may also name any other paying agents in the prospectus supplement. The Company may designate additional paying agents, change paying agents or change the office of any paying agent. However, the Company will be required to maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of a particular series.

All moneys paid by the Company to a paying agent for payment on any debt security which remain unclaimed at the end of two years after such payment was due will be repaid to the Company. Thereafter, the holder may look only to the Company for such payment.

Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets

The Company may not consolidate with or merge into any other person, in a transaction in which it is not the surviving corporation, or convey, transfer or lease the Company's properties and assets substantially as an entirety to, any person, unless:

- the Company shall be the surviving or continuing corporation in the transaction;
- the successor assumes the Company's obligations on the debt securities and under the indenture;
- immediately after giving effect to the transaction, no default or event of default shall have happened and be continuing; and
- certain other conditions are met.

If the debt securities are convertible for the Company's other securities or securities of other entities, the person with whom the Company consolidates or merges or to whom the Company sells all of its property must make provisions for the conversion of the debt securities into securities which the holders of the debt securities would have received if they had converted the debt securities before the consolidation, merger or sale.

Events of Default

Unless the Company informs you otherwise in the prospectus supplement, the indenture will define an event of default with respect to any series of debt securities as one or more of the following events:

- (1) failure to pay principal of or any premium on any debt security of that series when due and payable;
- (2) failure to pay any interest on any debt security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuation of that failure for a period of 90 days (unless the entire amount of such payment is deposited by the Company with the trustee or paying agent prior to the expiration of the 90-day period);
- (3) failure to deposit any sinking fund payment, when and as due in respect of any debt security of that series;
- (4) failure to perform or breach of any other covenant or warranty by the Company in the indenture (other than a covenant or warranty that has been included in the indenture solely for the benefit of a series of debt securities other than the series), which failure continues uncured for a period of 90 days after the Company receives the notice required in the indenture;
- (5) the Company's bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization; and
- (6) any other event of default with respect to debt securities of that series that is described in the applicable prospectus supplement accompanying this prospectus.

Table of Contents

An event of default of one series of debt securities is not necessarily an event of default for any other series of debt securities.

If an event of default, other than an event of default described in clause (5) above, shall occur and be continuing, after applicable notice and cure periods set forth in the indenture, either the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series may declare the principal amount of the debt securities of that series to be due and payable immediately.

If an event of default described in clause (5) above shall occur, the principal amount of all the debt securities of that series will automatically become immediately due and payable. Any payment by the Company on the subordinated debt securities following any such acceleration will be subject to the subordination provisions described below under "Subordinated Debt Securities."

After acceleration the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all events of default, other than the non-payment of accelerated principal, or other specified amount, have been cured or waived.

Other than the duty to act with the required care during an event of default, the trustee will not be obligated to exercise any of its rights or powers at the request of the holders unless the holders shall have offered to the trustee security and indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request.

Generally, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee.

A holder will not have any right to institute any proceeding under the indentures, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy under the indentures, unless:

- (1) the holder has previously given to the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default with respect to the debt securities of that series;
- (2) the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series have made a written request and have offered reasonable indemnity to the trustee to institute the proceeding; and
- (3) the trustee has failed to institute the proceeding and has not received direction inconsistent with the original request from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series within 90 days after the original request.

A holder may not use the indenture to prejudice the rights of any holder, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over another holder or to enforce any right under the indenture, except in the manner provided in the indenture and for the equal and ratable benefit of all holders (it being understood that the trustee does not have an affirmative duty to ascertain whether or not such actions or forbearances are unduly prejudicial to such holders).

Holders may, however, sue to enforce the payment of principal, premium or interest on any debt security on or after the due date or to enforce the right, if any, to convert any debt security without following the procedures listed in (1) through (3) above.

The Company will furnish the trustee an annual statement by its officers as to whether or not the Company is in default in the performance of the indenture and, if so, specifying all known defaults.

Modification and Waiver

The Company and the trustee may make modifications and amendments to the indentures with the consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding securities of each series affected by the modification or amendment.

However, neither the Company nor the trustee may make any modification or amendment without the consent of the holder of each outstanding security of that series affected by the modification or amendment if such modification or amendment would:

- change the stated maturity of any debt security;
- reduce the principal, premium, if any, or interest on any debt security;
- reduce the principal of an original issue discount security or any other debt security payable on acceleration of maturity;
- reduce the rate of interest on any debt security;
- change the currency in which any debt security is payable;
- impair the right to enforce any payment after the stated maturity or redemption date;
- waive any default or event of default in payment of the principal of, premium or interest on any debt security;
- waive a redemption payment or modify any of the redemption provisions of any debt security;
- adversely affect the right to convert any debt security in any material respect; or
- change the provisions in the indenture that relate to modifying or amending the indenture.

After any amendment becomes effective, the Company will mail to the holders a notice briefly describing such amendment.

Satisfaction and Discharge; Defeasance

The Company may be discharged from its obligations on the debt securities of any series that have matured or will mature or be redeemed within one year if the Company deposits with the trustee enough cash to pay all the principal, interest and any premium due to the stated maturity date or redemption date of the debt securities.

Each indenture will contain a provision that permits the Company to elect:

- to be discharged from all of the Company's obligations, subject to limited exceptions, with respect to any series of debt securities then outstanding; and/or
- to be released from the Company's obligations under the following covenants and from the consequences of an event of default resulting from a breach of these covenants: (1) the subordination provisions under a subordinated indenture; and (2) covenants as to payment of taxes and maintenance of corporate existence.

To make either of the above elections, the Company must deposit in trust with the trustee enough money to pay in full the principal, interest and premium on the debt securities. This amount may be made in cash and/or U.S. government obligations. As a condition to either of the above elections, the Company must deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel that the holders of the debt securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the action.

If any of the above events occurs, the holders of the debt securities of the series will not be entitled to the benefits of the indenture, except for the rights of holders to receive payments on debt securities or the registration of transfer and exchange of debt securities and replacement of lost, stolen or mutilated debt securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Notices

Notices to holders will be given by mail to the addresses of the holders in the security register.

Governing Law

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

Regarding the Trustee

The indentures will limit the right of the trustee, should it become a creditor of the Company, to obtain payment of claims or secure its claims.

The trustee will be permitted to engage in certain other transactions. However, if the trustee, acquires any conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, and there is a default under the indenture with respect to debt securities of any series for which they are the trustee, the trustee must eliminate the conflict or resign.

Subordinated Debt Securities

Payment on subordinated debt securities will, to the extent provided in the indenture, be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of the Company's senior indebtedness. Subordinated debt securities also are effectively subordinated to all debt and other liabilities, including trade payables and lease obligations, if any, of the Company's subsidiaries.

Upon any distribution of the Company's assets upon any dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of and interest on subordinated debt securities will be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of senior indebtedness of all senior indebtedness. In the event of any acceleration of the subordinated debt securities because of an event of default, the holders of any senior indebtedness would be entitled to payment in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to such holders of all senior indebtedness obligations before the holders of subordinated debt securities are entitled to receive any payment or distribution. The indentures will require the Company to promptly notify holders of designated senior indebtedness if payment of subordinated debt securities is accelerated because of an event of default.

The Company may not make any payment on subordinated debt securities, including upon redemption at the option of the holder of any subordinated debt securities or at the Company's option, if:

- a default in the payment of the principal, premium, if any, interest, rent or other obligations in respect of designated senior indebtedness occurs and is continuing beyond any applicable period of grace, which is called a "payment default"; or
- a default other than a payment default on any designated senior indebtedness occurs and is continuing that permits holders of designated senior indebtedness to accelerate its maturity, and the trustee receives notice of such default, which is called a "payment blockage notice" from the Company or any other person permitted to give such notice under the indenture, which is called a "non-payment default".

The Company may resume payments and distributions on subordinated debt securities:

- in the case of a payment default, upon the date on which such default is cured or waived or ceases to exist; and

[Table of Contents](#)

- in the case of a non-payment default, the earlier of the date on which such nonpayment default is cured or waived or ceases to exist and 179 days after the date on which the payment blockage notice is received by the trustee, if the maturity of the designated senior indebtedness has not been accelerated.

No new period of payment blockage may be commenced pursuant to a payment blockage notice unless 365 days have elapsed since the initial effectiveness of the immediately prior payment blockage notice and all scheduled payments of principal, premium and interest, including any liquidated damages, on the notes that have come due have been paid in full in cash. No non-payment default that existed or was continuing on the date of delivery of any payment blockage notice shall be the basis for any later payment blockage notice unless the non-payment default is based upon facts or events arising after the date of delivery of such payment blockage notice.

If the trustee or any holder of the notes receives any payment or distribution of the Company's assets in contravention of the subordination provisions on subordinated debt securities before all senior indebtedness is paid in full in cash, property or securities, including by way of set-off, or other payment satisfactory to holders of senior indebtedness, then such payment or distribution will be held in trust for the benefit of holders of senior indebtedness or their representatives to the extent necessary to make payment in full in cash or payment satisfactory to the holders of senior indebtedness of all unpaid senior indebtedness.

In the event of the Company's bankruptcy, dissolution or reorganization, holders of senior indebtedness may receive more, ratably, and holders of subordinated debt securities may receive less, ratably, than the Company's other creditors (including the Company's trade creditors). This subordination will not prevent the occurrence of any event of default under the indenture.

Unless the Company informs you otherwise in the prospectus supplement, the Company will not be prohibited from incurring debt, including senior indebtedness, under any indenture relating to subordinated debt securities. The Company may from time to time incur additional debt, including senior indebtedness.

The Company is obligated to pay reasonable compensation to the trustee and to indemnify the trustee and certain agents against certain losses, liabilities or expenses incurred by the trustee in connection with its duties relating to subordinated debt securities. The trustee's claims for these payments will generally be senior to those of noteholders in respect of all funds collected or held by the trustee.

Certain Definitions

"indebtedness" means:

- (1) all indebtedness, obligations and other liabilities for borrowed money, including overdrafts, foreign exchange contracts, currency exchange agreements, interest rate protection agreements, and any loans or advances from banks, or evidenced by bonds, debentures, notes or similar instruments, other than any account payable or other accrued current liability or obligation incurred in the ordinary course of business in connection with the obtaining of materials or services;
- (2) all reimbursement obligations and other liabilities with respect to letters of credit, bank guarantees or bankers' acceptances;
- (3) all obligations and liabilities in respect of leases required in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles to be accounted for on the Company's balance sheet;
- (4) all obligations and liabilities, contingent or otherwise, as lessee under leases for facility equipment (and related assets leased together with such equipment) and under any lease or related document (including a purchase agreement, conditional sale or other title retention or synthetic lease agreement) in connection with the lease of real property or improvement thereon (or any personal property included as part of any such lease) which provides that such Person is contractually obligated to purchase or cause a third party to purchase the leased property or pay an agreed upon residual value of

[Table of Contents](#)

the leased property, including the obligations under such lease or related document to purchase or cause a third party to purchase such leased property (whether or not such lease transaction is characterized as an operating lease or a capitalized lease in accordance with GAAP) or pay an agreed upon residual value of the leased property to the lessor;

(5) all obligations with respect to an interest rate or other swap, cap or collar agreement or other similar instrument or agreement or foreign currency hedge, exchange, purchase agreement or other similar instrument or agreement;

(6) all direct or indirect guaranties or similar agreements in respect of, and the Company's obligations or liabilities to purchase, acquire or otherwise assure a creditor against loss in respect of, indebtedness, obligations or liabilities of others of the type described in (1) through (5) above;

(7) any indebtedness or other obligations described in (1) through (6) above secured by any mortgage, pledge, lien or other encumbrance existing on property which is owned or held by the Company; and

(8) any and all refinancings, replacements, deferrals, renewals, extensions and refundings of, or amendments, modifications or supplements to, any indebtedness, obligation or liability of the kind described in clauses (1) through (7) above.

"senior indebtedness" means the principal, premium, if any, interest, including any interest accruing after bankruptcy, and rent or termination payment on or other amounts due on the Company's current or future indebtedness, whether created, incurred, assumed, guaranteed or in effect guaranteed by the Company, including any deferrals, renewals, extensions, refundings, amendments, modifications or supplements to the above. However, senior indebtedness does not include:

- indebtedness that expressly provides that it shall not be senior in right of payment to subordinated debt securities or expressly provides that it is on the same basis or junior to subordinated debt securities;
- the Company's indebtedness to any of the Company's majority-owned subsidiaries; and
- subordinated debt securities.

DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK

As of the date of this prospectus, the Company has authorized 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$.001 per share, none of which are outstanding. Under the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, the Company's Board is authorized to issue shares of the Company's preferred stock from time to time, in one or more classes or series, without stockholder approval. Prior to the issuance of shares of each series, the Board is required by the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware ("DGCL") to adopt resolutions and file a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, fixing for each such series the designations, powers, preferences, rights, qualifications, limitations and restrictions of the shares of such series. Any exercise of the Company's Board of its rights to do so may affect the rights and entitlements of the holders of the Company's common stock as set forth below.

The Company's Board could authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock with terms and conditions which could have the effect of discouraging a takeover or other transaction which holders of some, or a majority, of such shares might believe to be in their best interests or in which holders of some, or a majority, of such shares might receive a premium for their shares over the then-market price of such shares.

General

Subject to limitations prescribed by the DGCL, the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and the Company's Bylaws ("Bylaws"), the Company's Board is authorized to fix the number of shares constituting each series of preferred stock and the designations, powers, preferences, rights, qualifications, limitations and restrictions of the shares of such series, including such provisions as may be desired concerning voting, redemption, dividends, dissolution or the distribution of assets, conversion or exchange, and such other subjects or matters as may be fixed by resolution of the Board. Each series of preferred stock that the Company offers under this prospectus will, when issued, be fully paid and nonassessable and will not have, or be subject to, any preemptive or similar rights.

The applicable prospectus supplement(s) will describe the following terms of the series of preferred stock in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the title and stated value of the preferred stock;
- the number of shares of the preferred stock offered, the liquidation preference per share and the purchase price of the preferred stock;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) and/or payment date(s) or the method(s) of calculation for dividends;
- whether dividends shall be cumulative or non-cumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends on the preferred stock shall accumulate;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing, if any, for the preferred stock;
- the provisions for a sinking fund, if any, for the preferred stock;
- the provisions for redemption, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange or market;
- the terms and conditions, if applicable, upon which the preferred stock will be convertible into common stock or another series of the Company's preferred stock, including the conversion price (or its manner of calculation) and conversion period;
- the terms and conditions, if applicable, upon which preferred stock will be exchangeable into the Company's debt securities, including the exchange price, or its manner of calculation, and exchange period;

[Table of Contents](#)

- voting rights, if any, of the preferred stock; a discussion of any material and/or special U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- whether interests in the preferred stock will be represented by depositary shares;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company's affairs;
- any limitations on issuance of any series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company's affairs; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights, limitations or restrictions on the preferred stock.

Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, the preferred stock will, with respect to dividend rights and rights upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company rank:

- senior to all classes or series of the Company's common stock, and to all equity securities issued by the Company the terms of which specifically provide that such equity securities rank junior to the preferred stock with respect to dividend rights or rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company;
- on a parity with all equity securities issued by the Company that do not rank senior or junior to the preferred stock with respect to dividend rights or rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company; and
- junior to all equity securities issued by the Company the terms of which do not specifically provide that such equity securities rank on a parity with or junior to the preferred stock with respect to dividend rights or rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company (including any entity with which the Company may be merged or consolidated or to which all or substantially all of the Company's assets may be transferred or which transfers all or substantially all of the Company's assets).

As used for these purposes, the term "equity securities" does not include convertible debt securities.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for any series of preferred stock will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

The following description summarizes important terms of our capital stock. For a complete description, you should refer to our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, as well as the relevant portions of the DGCL.

General

As of the date of this prospectus, the Company has authorized 500 million shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share. As of July 11, 2019, there were 29,629,467 shares of common stock outstanding.

Voting Rights

Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Under our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws, our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors are able to elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose.

Dividend Rights

Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then-outstanding preferred stock, holders of common stock are not entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by the Board out of legally available funds.

Liquidation Rights

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then-outstanding shares of preferred stock.

Other Rights and Preferences

Holders of our common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

Registration Rights

Under our Amended and Restated Investor Rights Agreement, the holders of approximately 7.0 million shares of common stock, or their transferees, have the right to require us to register their shares under the Securities Act so that those shares may be publicly resold, or to include their shares in any registration statement we file, in each case as described below.

Demand Registration Rights

The holders of approximately 7.0 million shares of our common stock (on an as-converted basis), or their transferees, are entitled to certain demand registration rights. The holders of at least 55% of these shares can, on

[Table of Contents](#)

not more than three occasions, request that we register at least 40% of the shares issued to such holders, or a lesser percentage if the anticipated aggregate offering price, net of underwriting discounts and commissions, would exceed \$5,000,000. These registration rights are further subject to specified conditions and limitations, including the right of the underwriters, if any, to limit the number of shares included in any such registration under specified circumstances. Upon such a request, we are required to use commercially reasonable efforts to effect the registration as soon as practicable.

Piggyback Registration Rights

In the event that we determine to register any of our securities under the Securities Act (subject to certain exceptions), either for our own account or for the account of other security holders, the holders of approximately 7.0 million shares of our common stock (on an as-converted basis), or their transferees, will be entitled to certain “piggyback” registration rights allowing the holders to include their shares in such registration, subject to certain marketing and other limitations. As a result, whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act, other than with respect to a registration related to employee benefit plans, the offer and sale of debt securities, or corporate reorganizations or certain other transactions, the holders of these shares are entitled to notice of the registration and have the right, subject to limitations that the underwriters may impose on the number of shares included in the registration, to include their shares in the registration. In an underwritten offering, the managing underwriter, if any, has the right, subject to specified conditions, to limit the number of shares such holders may include.

Registration on Form S-3

The holders of approximately 7.0 million shares of our common stock (on an as-converted basis), or their transferees, are entitled to certain Form S-3 registration rights. The holders of at least 20% of these shares can make a written request that we register their shares on Form S-3 if we are eligible to file a registration statement on Form S-3 and if the aggregate price to the public of the shares offered is at least \$500,000 net of certain expenses related to the sale of the shares. These stockholders may make an unlimited number of requests for registration on Form S-3, but in no event will we be required to file more than two registrations on Form S-3 within any 12-month period.

Expenses of Registration

We will pay all expenses relating to any demand, piggyback or Form S-3 registration, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, subject to specified conditions and limitations.

Termination of Registration Rights

The registration rights granted under the Amended and Restated Investor Rights Agreement will terminate, with respect to a particular holder, at the earlier of: (i) such time as that holder and its affiliates may sell all of their shares of common stock pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act during any 90-day period; and (ii) the seven year anniversary of our initial public offering.

Anti-Takeover Provisions

The provisions of Delaware law, and our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws could have the effect of delaying, deferring or discouraging another person from acquiring control of our company. These provisions, which are summarized below, may have the effect of discouraging takeover bids. They are also designed, in part, to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to negotiate first with our Board. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with an unfriendly or unsolicited acquirer outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging a proposal to acquire us because negotiation of these proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

[Table of Contents](#)

Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law

We are subject to Section 203 of the DGCL, which prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any business combination with any interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date that such stockholder became an interested stockholder, with the following exceptions:

- before such date, the board of directors of the corporation approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon completion of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction began, excluding for purposes of determining the voting stock outstanding, but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder, those shares owned (i) by persons who are directors and also officers and (ii) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- on or after such date, the business combination is approved by the board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of the stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

In general, Section 203 defines a “business combination” to include the following:

- any merger or consolidation involving the corporation and the interested stockholder;
- any sale, transfer, pledge or other disposition of 10% or more of the assets of the corporation involving the interested stockholder;
- subject to specified exceptions, any transaction that results in the issuance or transfer by the corporation of any stock of the corporation to the interested stockholder;
- any transaction involving the corporation that has the effect of increasing the proportionate share of the stock or any class or series of the corporation beneficially owned by the interested stockholder; or
- the receipt by the interested stockholder of the benefit of any loans, advances, guarantees, pledges or other financial benefits by or through the corporation.

In general, Section 203 defines an “interested stockholder” as an entity or person who, together with the person’s affiliates and associates, beneficially owns, or within three years prior to the time of determination of interested stockholder status did own, 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws include a number of provisions that could deter hostile takeovers or delay or prevent changes in control of our company, including the following:

- **Classified Board.** Our certificate of incorporation provides for our Board to be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms. Only one class of directors is elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders, with the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms. Because our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights, stockholders holding a majority of the shares of common stock outstanding is able to elect all of our directors. Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws also provide that directors may be removed by the stockholders only for cause upon the vote of 66 2/3% or more of our outstanding common stock. Furthermore, the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the board of directors, and vacancies and newly created directorships on the board of directors may, except as otherwise required by law or determined by the board, only be filled by a majority vote of the directors then serving on the board, even though less than a quorum.

[Table of Contents](#)

- **Special Meetings of Stockholders and Stockholder Action by Written Consent.** Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that all stockholder actions must be effected at a duly called meeting of stockholders and eliminate the right of stockholders to act by written consent without a meeting. Our bylaws also provide that only our chairman of the board, Chief Executive Officer (or if there is no Chief Executive Officer, the President) or the board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors may call a special meeting of stockholders.
- **Advance Notice Requirements for Stockholder Proposals.** Our bylaws provide that stockholders seeking to present proposals before a meeting of stockholders, including the nomination of director candidates, must provide timely advance notice in writing, and specifies requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder's notice.
- **Amendment to Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws.** Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that the stockholders cannot amend the provisions described above except by a vote of 66 2/3% or more of our outstanding common stock.

The combination of these provisions makes it more difficult for our existing stockholders to replace our Board as well as for another party to obtain control of us by replacing our Board. Since our Board has the power to retain and discharge our officers, these provisions could also make it more difficult for existing stockholders or another party to effect a change in management. In addition, the authorization of undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our Board to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede any attempt to effect a change of control of our company.

These provisions are intended to enhance the likelihood of continued stability in the composition of our Board and its policies and to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to reduce our vulnerability to hostile takeovers and to discourage tactics that may be used in proxy fights. However, such provisions could have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our shares and may have the effect of delaying changes in our control or management. As a consequence, these provisions may also inhibit fluctuations in the market price of our stock that could result from actual or rumored takeover attempts. We believe that the benefits of these provisions, including increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure our company, outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover proposals, because negotiation of takeover proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

Choice of Forum

Our certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the state of Delaware will be the exclusive forum for: (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (ii) any action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty; (iii) any action asserting a claim against us arising pursuant to the DGCL, our certificate of incorporation or our bylaws; (iv) or any action asserting a claim against us that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Our certificate of incorporation further provides that the federal district courts of the United States will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act. The enforceability of similar choice of forum provisions in some other companies' certificates of incorporation has been challenged in legal proceedings, and it is possible that, in connection with any action, a court could find the choice of forum provisions contained in our certificate of incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in such action.

On December 19, 2018, the Delaware Chancery Court issued an opinion in *Sciabacucchi v. Salzberg*, C.A. No. 2017-0931-JTL, invalidating a provision in the certificates of incorporation of three Delaware corporations that each purported to limit to federal court the forum in which a stockholder could bring a claim under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"). The Delaware Chancery Court held that a Delaware corporation can only use its constitutive documents to bind a plaintiff to a particular forum where the claim involves rights or relationships that were established by or under Delaware's corporate law.

[Table of Contents](#)

In light of the recent *Sciabacucchi* decision, the Company does not currently intend to enforce the federal forum selection provision in Article IX of its certificate of incorporation unless the *Sciabacucchi* decision is reversed on appeal. If the decision is not appealed or if the Delaware Supreme Court affirms the Delaware Chancery Court's decision, then we will seek approval by our stockholders to amend our certificate of incorporation at our next regularly-scheduled annual meeting of stockholders to remove the invalid provision.

Limitation of Liability and Indemnification

Our certificate of incorporation provides that no director will be personally liable for monetary damages for breach of any fiduciary duty as a director, except with respect to liability:

- for any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- for acts or omissions not in good faith or that involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- under Section 174 of the DGCL (governing distributions to stockholders); or
- for any transaction from which the director derived any improper personal benefit.

If the DGCL is amended to authorize corporate action further eliminating or limiting the personal liability of directors, then the liability of our directors will be eliminated or limited to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL, as so amended. The modification or repeal of this provision of our certificate of incorporation will not adversely affect any right or protection of a director existing at the time of such modification or repeal.

Our bylaws also provide that we will, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify our directors and officers against all liabilities and expenses in any suit or proceeding or arising out of their status as an officer or director or their activities in these capacities. We will also indemnify any person who, at our request, is or was serving as a director, officer, employee, agent or trustee of another corporation or of a partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other enterprise. We may, by action of our Board, provide indemnification to our employees and agents within the same scope and effect as the foregoing indemnification of directors and officers.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Broadridge Corporate Issuer Solutions, Inc. 1717 Arch Street, Suite 1300, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103.

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

General

We may issue warrants for the purchase of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. We may issue warrants independently or together with any of our securities. Warrants also may be attached to other securities that we may issue. We may issue warrants in different series under separate warrant agreements or under a single warrant agreement between us and a specified warrant agent described in an applicable prospectus supplement. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

As of the date of this prospectus, we have (i) 12,321 warrants to purchase shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$15.30 per share, (ii) 531,067 warrants to purchase shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$12.60 per share, and (iii) 62,181 warrants to purchase shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$5.68 per share to \$12.60 per share.

An applicable prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of any warrants that we issue or offer, including:

- the title of the warrants;
- the aggregate number of warrants;
- the price or prices at which the warrants will be issued;
- the currencies in which the price or prices of the warrants may be payable;
- the designation, amount and terms of our capital stock or debt securities purchasable upon exercise of the warrants;
- the designation and terms of our other securities, if any, that may be issued in connection with the warrants, and the number of warrants issued with each corresponding security;
- if applicable, the date that the warrants and the securities purchasable upon exercise of the warrants will be separately transferable;
- the prices and currencies for which the securities purchasable upon exercise of the warrants may be purchased;
- the date that the warrants may first be exercised;
- the date that the warrants expire;
- the minimum or maximum amount of warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- the effect of any merger, consolidation, sale or other disposition of our business on the warrant agreements and the warrants;
- the terms of any rights to redeem or call the warrants;
- any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price or number of securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- the manner in which the warrant agreements and warrants may be modified;
- a discussion of certain federal income tax considerations; and
- any other material terms of the warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the warrants.

Exercise of Warrants

Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase for cash the principal amount of debt securities, preferred stock or common stock at the applicable exercise price set forth in, or determined as described in, the applicable prospectus supplement. Warrants may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will become void.

Warrants may be exercised by delivering to the corporation trust office of the warrant agent or any other officer indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement (i) the warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed and (ii) payment of the amount due upon exercise. As soon as practicable following exercise, we will forward the debt securities, preferred stock or common stock purchasable upon exercise. If less than all of the warrants represented by a warrant certificate are exercised, a new warrant certificate will be issued for the remaining warrants if the expiration date of the warrants has not occurred. If we so indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may surrender securities as all or part of the exercise price for warrants. We may, but we will not be required to, permit the exercise of warrants through the delivery of a notice of guaranteed delivery from a bank, a trust company, or a New York Stock Exchange member guaranteeing delivery of (i) payment of the exercise price for the securities for which the warrant is being exercised, and (ii) a properly completed and executed warrant certificate. The notice of guaranteed delivery must be received by the warrant agent before the expiration of the warrants, and the warrant agent will not honor a notice of guaranteed delivery unless a properly completed and executed warrant certificate and full payment for the securities being purchased are received by the warrant agent by the close of business on the third business day after the expiration time of the warrants.

Governing Law

Unless we provide otherwise in an applicable prospectus supplement, the warrants and warrant agreements, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to the warrants or warrant agreements, will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

Enforceability of Rights by Holders of Warrants

Each warrant agent, if any, will act solely as our agent under the applicable warrant agreement and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holder of any warrant. A single bank or trust company may act as warrant agent for more than one issue of warrants. A warrant agent will have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by us under the applicable warrant agreement or warrant, including any duty or responsibility to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise, or to make any demand upon us. Any holder of a warrant may, without the consent of the related warrant agent or the holder of any other warrant, enforce by appropriate legal action its right to exercise, and receive the securities purchasable upon exercise of, its warrants.

DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS

We may issue rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock, or warrants in one or more series. Rights may be issued independently or together with any other offered security and may or may not be transferable by the person purchasing or receiving the subscription rights. In connection with any rights offering to our stockholders, we may enter into a standby underwriting arrangement with one or more underwriters pursuant to which the underwriters will purchase any of the offered securities remaining unsubscribed after the expiration of the rights offering. In connection with a rights offering to our stockholders, we will distribute certificates evidencing the rights and an applicable prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving rights in the rights offering. An applicable prospectus supplement will describe the following terms of rights in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the title of the rights;
- the securities for which the rights are exercisable;
- the exercise price for the rights;
- the date of determining the security holders entitled to the rights distribution;
- the number of the rights issued to each security holder;
- the extent to which the rights are transferable;
- if applicable, a discussion of the material United States federal income tax considerations applicable to the issuance or exercise of the rights;
- the date on which the right to exercise the rights shall commence, and the date on which the rights shall expire (subject to any extension);
- the conditions to completion of the rights offering;
- any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price or number of securities issuable upon exercise of the rights;
- the extent to which the rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or other purchase arrangement that we may enter into in connection with the rights offering; and
- any other terms of the rights, including terms, procedures and limits relating to the exchange or exercise of the rights.

Each right will entitle the holder to purchase an amount of securities for cash, at the exercise price. Rights may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date of the rights. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised rights will become void. The manner in which rights may be exercised will be described in an applicable prospectus supplement. We may, but are not be required to, permit the exercise of rights through the delivery of a notice of guaranteed delivery from a bank, a trust company, or a New York Stock Exchange member guaranteeing delivery of (i) payment of the exercise price for the securities for which the rights are being exercised, and (ii) a properly completed and executed rights certificate. The notice of guaranteed delivery must be received by the rights agent before the expiration of the rights, and the rights agent will not honor a notice of guaranteed delivery unless a properly completed and executed rights certificate and full payment for the securities being purchased are received by the rights agent by the close of business on the third business day after the expiration time of the rights. Upon receipt of payment and the proper completion and due execution of the rights certificate at the designated office of the rights agent or any other office indicated in an applicable prospectus supplement, we or the transfer agent will forward, as soon as practicable, the securities purchased upon the exercise of the rights. We may determine to offer any unsubscribed offered securities directly to persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of the methods, including pursuant to standby underwriting arrangements, as set forth in an applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable prospectus supplement, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the units that we may offer under this prospectus. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any units that we may offer under this prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of units in more detail in an applicable prospectus supplement. The terms of any units offered under an applicable prospectus supplement may differ from the terms described below. However, no prospectus supplement will fundamentally change the terms that are set forth in this prospectus or offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of its effectiveness.

We will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference to reports that we file with the SEC, the form of unit agreement that describes the terms of the series of units we are offering, and any supplemental agreements, before the issuance of the related series of units. The following summaries of material terms and provisions of the units are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the unit agreement and any supplemental agreements applicable to a particular series of units. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplements related to the particular series of units that we sell under this prospectus, as well as the complete unit agreement and any supplemental agreements that contain the terms of the units.

General

We may issue units comprised of one or more debt securities, common stock, preferred stock, warrants and/or units in any combination. Each unit will be issued so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. Thus, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security. The unit agreement under which a unit is issued may provide that the securities included in the unit may not be held or transferred separately, at any time or at any time before a specified date.

We will describe in an applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of units, including:

- the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;
- any provisions of the governing unit agreement that differ from those described below; and
- any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units or of the securities comprising the units.

The provisions described in this section, as well as those described under “Description of Preferred Stock,” “Description of Capital Stock,” “Description of Debt Securities,” “Description of Warrants,” and “Description of Rights” will apply to each unit and to any preferred stock, common stock, debt security, warrant or right included in each unit, respectively.

Issuance in Series

We may issue units in the amounts and in numerous distinct series as we determine.

Enforceability of Rights by Holders of Units

Each unit agent will act solely as our agent under the applicable unit agreement and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holder of any unit. A single bank or trust company may act as unit agent for more than one series of units. A unit agent will have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by us under the applicable unit agreement or unit, including any duty or responsibility to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise, or to make any demand upon us. Any holder of a unit may, without the consent of the related unit agent or the holder of any other unit, enforce by appropriate legal action its rights as holder under any security included in the unit.

[Table of Contents](#)

Title

We, the unit agent and any of its agents may treat the registered holder of any unit certificate as an absolute owner of the units evidenced by that certificate for any purposes and as the person entitled to exercise the rights attaching to the units, despite any notice to the contrary.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of electroCore, Inc. Subsidiaries and Affiliate as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and for each of the years in the two-year period ended December 31, 2018, have been incorporated by reference herein in reliance upon the report of KPMG LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, incorporated by reference herein, and upon the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

LEGAL MATTERS

If and when the securities being registered hereunder are issued, the validity of such issuance will be passed upon for the Company by Dentons US LLP, New York, New York.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

The Company files annual, quarterly and periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy any materials that the Company files with the SEC at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Many of the Company's SEC filings are also available to the public from the SEC's Website at www.sec.gov. The Company makes available free of charge its annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information upon request. To request such materials, please contact the Corporate Secretary at the following address or telephone number: electroCore, Inc., 150 Allen Road, Suite 201, Basking Ridge, New Jersey 07920, Attention: Corporate Secretary; (973) 290-0097. Exhibits to the documents will not be sent, unless those exhibits have specifically been incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

The Company maintains its website at www.electrocore.com. The Company's website and the information contained therein or connected thereto are not incorporated into this Registration Statement.

The Company has filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities Act relating to the securities the Company is offering by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. Please refer to the registration statement and its exhibits and schedules for further information with respect to the Company and the Company's securities. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract or other document are not necessarily complete and, in each instance, the Company refers you to the copy of that contract or document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement. You may read and obtain a copy of the registration statement and its exhibits and schedules from the SEC, as described in the preceding paragraph.

INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows the Company to “incorporate by reference” the information the Company files with them, which means that the Company can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be part of this prospectus, and information that the Company files later with the SEC will automatically update and supersede this information. The Company incorporates by reference the documents filed with SEC listed below:

- The Company’s Annual Report on [Form 10-K](#) for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, filed with the SEC on March 28, 2019.
- The Company’s Quarterly Report on [Form 10-Q](#) for the quarter ended March 31, 2019, filed with the SEC on May 15, 2019.
- The Company’s Current Reports on Form 8-K and amendment to Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on [May 30, 2019](#), [June 4, 2019](#), [June 7, 2019](#) and [June 10, 2019](#).
- The description of the Company’s capital stock is incorporated herein by reference to the description included under the caption “Description of Capital Stock” of the prospectus included in the Registration Statement on [Form S-1](#) (File No. 333-225084) filed by the Company with the SEC on June 11, 2018.

In addition, all documents subsequently filed by the Company pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, prior to the filing of a post-effective amendment which indicates that all securities offered have been sold or which deregisters all securities then remaining unsold, shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this Registration Statement and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of such documents. However, any documents or portions thereof, whether specifically listed above or filed in the future, that are not deemed “filed” with the Commission, including without limitation any information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K or certain exhibits furnished pursuant to Item 9.01 of Form 8-K, shall not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this Registration Statement.

Any statement in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for the purposes of this Registration Statement to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document which also is incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this Registration Statement.

\$50,000,000



electroCore, Inc.

**Debt Securities
Preferred Stock
Common Stock
Warrants
Rights
Units**

PROSPECTUS

, 2019

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution

The following table sets forth all expenses, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions, payable by the registrant in connection with the sale of the securities being registered. All of such fees expenses, except for the registration fee, are estimates:

	Amount
Registration fee	\$6,060
Accounting fees and expenses	\$ *
Legal fees and expenses	\$ *
Miscellaneous fees and expenses	\$ *
Total	\$ *

* The calculation of these fees and expenses is dependent on the number of issuances and amount of securities offered and, accordingly, cannot be estimated at this time.

The Company shall bear all expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being offered hereby.

Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers

As permitted by Section 102 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our certificate of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that limit or eliminate the personal liability of our directors for a breach of their fiduciary duty of care as directors. The duty of care generally requires that, when acting on behalf of the corporation, directors exercise an informed business judgment based on all material information reasonably available to them. Consequently, a director will not be personally liable to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liability for:

- any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- any act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- any act related to unlawful stock repurchases, redemptions or other distributions or payment of dividends; or
- any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

These limitations of liability do not affect the availability of equitable remedies such as injunctive relief or rescission. Our certificate of incorporation also authorizes us to indemnify our officers, directors and other agents to the fullest extent permitted under Delaware law.

As permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our bylaws provide that:

- we may indemnify our directors, officers, and employees to the fullest extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, subject to limited exceptions;
- we may advance expenses to our directors, officers and employees in connection with a legal proceeding to the fullest extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, subject to limited exceptions; and
- we may advance expenses to our directors, officers and employees in connection with a legal proceeding to the fullest extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, subject to limited exceptions; and
- the rights provided in our bylaws are not exclusive.

Table of Contents

Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws provide for the indemnification provisions described above and elsewhere herein. We have entered into separate indemnification agreements with our directors and officers which are broader than the specific indemnification provisions contained in the Delaware General Corporation Law. These indemnification agreements generally require us, among other things, to indemnify our officers and directors against liabilities that may arise by reason of their status or service as directors or officers, other than liabilities arising from willful misconduct. These indemnification agreements also generally require us to advance any expenses incurred by the directors or officers as a result of any proceeding against them as to which they could be indemnified. In addition, we have purchased a policy of directors' and officers' liability insurance that insures our directors and officers against the cost of defense, settlement or payment of a judgment in some circumstances. These indemnification provisions and the indemnification agreements may be sufficiently broad to permit indemnification of our officers and directors for liabilities, including reimbursement of expenses incurred, arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Act, may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable.

Item 16. Exhibits

Exhibit No.	Description	Method of Filing
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement	To be filed by amendment or pursuant to a report to be filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, and incorporated herein by reference.
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation of the Registrant	Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2018 as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2018.
3.2	Bylaws of the Registrant	Incorporated by reference to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2018 as filed with the Commission on August 14, 2018.
4.2	Certificate of Designations for Preferred Stock	To be filed by amendment or pursuant to a report to be filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, and incorporated herein by reference.
4.4	Form of Unit Agreement, including Form of Unit, if any	To be filed by amendment or pursuant to a report to be filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, and incorporated herein by reference.
4.5	Form of Rights Agreement and Right Certificate, if any	To be filed by amendment or pursuant to a report to be filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, and incorporated herein by reference.
4.6	Form of Senior Indenture between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as Trustee	Filed herewith
4.7	Form of Subordinated Indenture between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as Trustee	Filed herewith

Table of Contents

Exhibit No.	Description	Method of Filing
4.8	Form of Senior Debt Security	To be filed, if necessary, by a Current Report on Form 8-K or by amendment
4.9	Form of Subordinated Debt Security	To be filed, if necessary, by a Current Report on Form 8-K or by amendment
4.10	Form of Warrant Agreement, including Form of Warrant Certificate	To be filed, if necessary, by a Current Report on Form 8-K or by amendment
5.1	Opinion of Dentons US LLP	Filed herewith
12.1	Statement regarding computation of ratios of earnings to fixed charges	To be filed by amendment or pursuant to a report to be filed pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, and incorporated herein by reference.
23.1	Consent of KPMG LLP	Filed herewith
23.2	Consent of Dentons US LLP	Filed herewith (included in the opinion filed as Exhibit 5.1)
24.1	Powers of Attorney	Filed herewith (included in signature page to this registration statement)
25.1	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., with respect to the Senior Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939	Filed herewith
25.2	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., with respect to the Subordinated Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939	Filed herewith

Item 17. Undertakings

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

provided, however, that paragraphs (1)(i), (1)(ii) and (1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in

[Table of Contents](#)

reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to section 13 or section 15(d) of the Exchange Act that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

(i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;

(ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;

(iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and

(iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

(b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Exchange Act (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Exchange) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(c) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to supplement the prospectus, after the expiration of the subscription period, to set forth the results of the subscription offer, the transactions by the underwriters during the subscription period, the amount of unsubscribed securities to be purchased by the underwriters, and the terms of any subsequent reoffering thereof. If any public offering by the underwriters is to be made on terms differing from those set forth on the cover page of the prospectus, a post-effective amendment will be filed to set forth the terms of such offering.

(d) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:

(1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.

(2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(e) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under section 305(b) (2) of the Act.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirement of the Securities Act, the Registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized in the City of Basking Ridge, State of New Jersey, on this 15th day of July 2019.

ELECTROCORE, INC.

By: /s/ Brian Posner
Brian Posner
Chief Financial Officer

We, the undersigned officers and directors of electroCore, Inc., and each of us, do hereby constitute and appoint Brian Posner as his or her true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, to do any and all acts and things in our name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, in connection with this registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities, or any registration statement for the same offering that is to be effective upon filing under the Securities Act, including, without limitation, to sign for us or any of us in our names in the capacities indicated below any and all amendments or supplements to this registration statement, including any and all stickers and post-effective amendments to the registration statement, and to sign any and all additional registration statements relating to the same offering of securities as this registration statement that are filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the SEC and any applicable securities exchange or securities self-regulatory body, granting unto said attorney-in-fact and agent full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact and agent, or his substitutes or substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Capacity	Date
<u>/s/ Francis R. Amato</u> Francis R. Amato	Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Brian Posner</u> Brian Posner	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Carrie S. Cox</u> Carrie S. Cox	Chairman of the Board	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Michael G. Atieh</u> Michael G. Atieh	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Nicholas Colucci</u> Nicholas Colucci	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Joseph P. Errico</u> Joseph P. Errico	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>Thomas J. Errico, M.D.</u> Thomas J. Errico, M.D.	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Trevor J. Moody</u> Trevor J. Moody	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ Stephen L. Ondra, M.D.</u> Stephen L. Ondra, M.D.	Director	July 15, 2019
<u>/s/ James L.L. Tullis</u> James L.L. Tullis	Director	July 15, 2019

ELECTROCORE, INC.

and

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A..

as Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of _____ ,

Senior Debt Securities

Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and
 Indenture, dated as of _____,

Section 310(a)(1)	7.10
(a)(2)	7.10
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(a)(5)	7.10
(b)	7.10
Section 311(a)	7.11
(b)	7.11
(c)	Not Applicable
Section 312(a)	2.6
(b)	10.3
(c)	10.3
Section 313(a)	7.6
(b)(1)	7.6
(b)(2)	7.6
(c)(1)	7.6
(d)	7.6
Section 314(a)	4.2, 10.5
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	10.4
(c)(2)	10.4
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	10.5
(f)	Not Applicable

Section 315(a)	7.1
(b)	7.5
(c)	7.1
(d)	7.1
(e)	6.14
Section 316(a)	2.10
(a)(1)(A)	6.12
(a)(1)(B)	6.13
(b)	6.8
Section 317(a)(1)	6.3
(a)(2)	6.4
(b)	2.5
Section 318(a)	10.1

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE	1
Section 1.1 Definitions	1
Section 1.2 Other Definitions	4
Section 1.3 Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act	4
Section 1.4 Rules of Construction	5
ARTICLE II THE SECURITIES	5
Section 2.1 Issuable in Series	5
Section 2.2 Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities	5
Section 2.3 Execution and Authentication	7
Section 2.4 Agents.	8
Section 2.5 Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust	8
Section 2.6 Securityholder Lists	9
Section 2.7 Transfer and Exchange	9
Section 2.8 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	9
Section 2.9 Outstanding Securities	10
Section 2.10 Treasury Securities	10
Section 2.11 Temporary Securities	10
Section 2.12 Cancellation	10
Section 2.13 Defaulted Interest	10
Section 2.14 Global Securities	11
Section 2.15 CUSIP Numbers	12
ARTICLE III REDEMPTION	13
Section 3.1 Notice to Trustee	13

	PAGE	
Section 3.2	Selection of Securities to be Redeemed	13
Section 3.3	Notice of Redemption	13
Section 3.4	Effect of Notice of Redemption	14
Section 3.5	Deposit of Redemption Price	14
Section 3.6	Securities Redeemed in Part	14
ARTICLE IV COVENANTS		14
Section 4.1	Payment of Principal and Interest	14
Section 4.2	SEC Reports	14
Section 4.3	Compliance Certificate	14
Section 4.4	Corporate Existence	15
Section 4.5	Taxes	15
ARTICLE V SUCCESSORS		15
Section 5.1	When Company May Merge, Etc.	15
Section 5.2	Successor Corporation Substituted	15
ARTICLE VI DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES		16
Section 6.1	Events of Default	16
Section 6.2	Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	17
Section 6.3	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	18
Section 6.4	Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	18
Section 6.5	Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	19
Section 6.6	Application of Money Collected	19
Section 6.7	Limitation on Suits	19
Section 6.8	Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal and Interest	20
Section 6.9	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	20
Section 6.10	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	20

	PAGE	
Section 6.11	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	20
Section 6.12	Control by Holders	20
Section 6.13	Waiver of Past Defaults	21
Section 6.14	Undertaking for Costs	21
ARTICLE VII TRUSTEE		21
Section 7.1	Duties of Trustee	21
Section 7.2	Rights of Trustee	22
Subject to the provisions of Section 601:		22
Section 7.3	Individual Rights of Trustee	24
Section 7.4	Trustee's Disclaimer	24
Section 7.5	Notice of Defaults	24
Section 7.6	Reports by Trustee to Holders	24
Section 7.7	Compensation and Indemnity	24
Section 7.8	Replacement of Trustee	25
Section 7.9	Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.	26
Section 7.10	Eligibility; Disqualification	26
Section 7.11	Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	26
ARTICLE VIII SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE		26
Section 8.1	Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	26
Section 8.2	Application of Trust Funds; Indemnification	27
Section 8.3	Legal Defeasance of Securities of any Series	28
Section 8.4	Covenant Defeasance	29
Section 8.5	Repayment to Company	30
Section 8.6	Reinstatement	30

	PAGE
ARTICLE IX AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS	30
Section 9.1 Without Consent of Holders	30
Section 9.2 With Consent of Holders	31
Section 9.6 Notation on or Exchange of Securities	32
Section 9.7 Trustee Protected	32
ARTICLE X MISCELLANEOUS	32
Section 10.1 Trust Indenture Act Controls	32
Section 10.2 Notices	33
Section 10.3 Communication by Holders with Other Holders	34
Section 10.4 Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent	34
Section 10.5 Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion	34
Section 10.6 Rules by Trustee and Agents	34
Section 10.7 Legal Holidays	34
Section 10.8 No Recourse Against Others	35
Section 10.9 Counterparts	35
Section 10.10 Governing Laws; Waiver of Jury Trial; Submission to Jurisdiction.	35
Section 10.11 No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements	35
Section 10.12 Successors	35
Section 10.13 Severability	36
Section 10.14 Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.	36
Section 10.15 Force Majeure	36
ARTICLE XI SINKING FUNDS	36
Section 11.1 Applicability of Article	36
Section 11.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	36
Section 11.3 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	37

INDENTURE, dated as of _____, between electroCore, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., a national banking association, as trustee (the “Trustee”).

Each party agrees as follows for the benefit of the other party and for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities issued under this Indenture.

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

Section 1.1 Definitions.

“Additional Amounts” means any additional amounts which are required hereby or by any Security, under circumstances specified herein or therein, to be paid by the Company in respect of certain taxes imposed on Holders specified therein and which are owing to such Holders.

“Affiliate” of any specified person means any other person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” (including, with correlative meanings, the terms “controlled by” and “under common control with”), as used with respect to any person, shall mean the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such person, whether through the ownership of voting securities or by agreement or otherwise.

“Agent” means any Registrar, Paying Agent, Service Agent or authenticating agent.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper in an official language of the country of publication customarily published at least once a day for at least five days in each calendar week and of general circulation in the place in connection with which the term is used. If it shall be impractical to make any publication of any notice required hereby in an Authorized Newspaper, any publication or other notice in lieu thereof that is made or given by the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient publication of such notice.

“Bearer” means anyone in possession from time to time of a Bearer Security.

“Board of Directors” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee thereof.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been adopted by the Board of Directors or pursuant to authorization by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of the certificate and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series, any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in The City of New York on which banking institutions are authorized or required by law, regulation or executive order to close.

“Company” means the party named as such above until a successor replaces it and thereafter means the successor.

“Company Order” means a written order signed in the name of the Company by two Officers, one of whom must be the Company’s chief executive officer, chief financial officer or principal accounting officer.

“Company Request” means a written request signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, a President or a Vice President, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania shall be principally administered, which office as of the date of this instrument is located at 500 Ross Street, 12th Floor, Pittsburgh, PA 15262, except that with respect to presentation of Securities for payment or for registration of transfer or exchange, such term shall mean the office or agency of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate agency business shall be conducted, which office at the date of this instrument is located at 240 Greenwich Street, New York, New York 10286; Attention: Corporate Trust Division—Corporate Finance Unit, or, in the case of any of such offices or agency, such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Company.

“Default” means any event which is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Depository” means, with respect to the Securities of any Series issuable or issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, the person designated as Depository for such Series by the Company, which Depository shall be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act; and if at any time there is more than one such person, “Depository” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Securities of such Series.

“Discount Security” means any Security that provides for an amount less than the stated principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

“Dollars” means the currency of The United States of America.

“ECU” means the European Currency Unit as determined by the Commission of the European Union.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Foreign Currency” means any currency or currency unit issued by a government other than the government of The United States of America.

“Foreign Government Obligations” means with respect to Securities of any Series that are denominated in a Foreign Currency, (i) direct obligations of the government that issued or caused to be issued such currency for the payment of which obligations its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a person controlled or supervised by or acting as an agency or instrumentality of such government the timely payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by such government, which, in either case under clauses (i) or (ii), are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof.

“Global Security” or “Global Securities” means a Security or Securities, as the case may be, in the form established pursuant to Section 2.2 evidencing all or part of a Series of Securities, issued to the Depository for such Series or its nominee, and registered in the name of such Depository or nominee.

“Holder” or “Securityholder” means a person in whose name a Security is registered or the holder of a Bearer Security.

“Indenture” means this Indenture as amended from time to time and shall include the form and terms of particular Series of Securities established as contemplated hereunder.

“interest” with respect to any Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security or installment of principal thereof, means the date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption, notice of option to elect repayment or otherwise.

“Officer” means the Chairman of the Board, any President, any Vice-President, the Treasurer, the Secretary, any Assistant Treasurer or any Assistant Secretary of the Company.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by two Officers, one of whom must be the Company’s principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of legal counsel who shall be acceptable to the Trustee. The counsel may be an employee of or counsel to the Company.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“principal” of a Security means the principal of the Security plus, when appropriate, the premium, if any, on, and any Additional Amounts in respect of, the Security.

“Responsible Officer” means, with respect to the Trustee, any officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Division—Corporate Finance Unit (or any successor division or unit) of the Trustee located at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture, and for the purposes of the penultimate paragraph of Section 1.3, Section 7.1(c)(ii) and the second sentence of Section 7.5 shall also include any other officer of the Trustee to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such officer’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“SEC” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Securities” means the debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company of any Series authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Series” or “Series of Securities” means each series of debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company created pursuant to Sections 2.1 and 2.2 hereof.

“Stated Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” of any specified Person means any corporation of which at least a majority of the outstanding stock having by the terms thereof ordinary voting power for the election of directors of such corporation (irrespective of whether or not at the time stock of any other class or classes of such corporation shall have or might have voting power by reason of the happening of any contingency) is at the time directly or indirectly owned by such Person, or by one or more other Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries.

“TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S. Code Sections 77aaa-77bbb) as in effect on the date of this Indenture; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “TIA” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter

“Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that Series.

“U.S. Government Obligations” means securities which are (i) direct obligations of The United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of The United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by The United States of America, and which in the case of (i) and (ii) are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such U.S. Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such U.S. Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

Section 1.2 Other Definitions.

<u>TERM</u>	<u>DEFINED IN SECTION</u>
“Bankruptcy Law”	6.1
“Custodian”	6.1
“Event of Default”	6.1
“Legal Holiday”	10.7
“mandatory sinking fund payment”	11.1
“optional sinking fund payment”	11.1
“Paying Agent”	2.4
“Registrar”	2.4
“Service Agent”	2.4
“successor Person”	5.1

Section 1.3 Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act.

Whenever this Indenture refers to a provision of the TIA, the provision is incorporated by reference in and made a part of this Indenture. The following TIA terms used in this Indenture have the following meanings:

“Commission” means the SEC.

“indenture securities” means the Securities.

“indenture security holder” means a Securityholder.

“indenture to be qualified” means this Indenture.

“indenture trustee” or “institutional trustee” means the Trustee.

“obligor” on the indenture securities means the Company and any successor obligor upon the Securities.

All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined by the TIA, defined by TIA reference to another statute or defined by SEC rule under the TIA and not otherwise defined herein are used herein as so defined.

Section 1.4 Rules of Construction.

Unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) a term has the meaning assigned to it;
- (b) an accounting term not otherwise defined has the meaning assigned to it in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- (c) references to “generally accepted accounting principles” shall mean generally accepted accounting principles in effect as of the time when and for the period as to which such accounting principles are to be applied;
- (d) “or” is not exclusive;
- (e) words in the singular include the plural, and in the plural include the singular;
- (f) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article,” a “Section” or an “Exhibit” refers to an Article, a Section or an Exhibit, as the case may be, of this Indenture;
- (g) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;
- (h) words importing any gender include the other genders; and
- (i) provisions apply to successive events and transactions.

ARTICLE II

THE SECURITIES

Section 2.1 Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more Series. All Securities of a Series shall be identical except as may be set forth in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers’ Certificate detailing the adoption of the terms thereof pursuant to the authority granted under a Board Resolution. In the case of Securities of a Series to be issued from time to time, the Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture may provide for the method by which specified terms (such as interest rate, maturity date, record date or date from which interest shall accrue) are to be determined. Securities may differ between Series in respect of any matters, provided that all Series of Securities shall be equally and ratably entitled to the benefits of the Indenture.

Section 2.2 Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities.

At or prior to the issuance of any Securities within a Series, the following shall be established (as to the Series generally, in the case of Subsection 2.2.1 and either as to such Securities within the Series or as to the Series generally in the case of Subsections 2.2.2 through 2.2.22) by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers’ Certificate pursuant to authority granted under a Board Resolution:

- 2.2.1 the title of the Series (which shall distinguish the Securities of that particular Series from the Securities of any other Series);
- 2.2.2 the price or prices (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount thereof) at which the Securities of the Series will be issued;

- 2.2.3 any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the Series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the Series pursuant to Section 2.7, 2.8, 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6);
- 2.2.4 the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the Series is payable;
- 2.2.5 the rate or rates (which may be fixed or variable) per annum or, if applicable, the method used to determine such rate or rates (including, but not limited to, any commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index) at which the Securities of the Series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest, if any, shall accrue, the date or dates on which such interest, if any, shall commence and be payable and any regular record date for the interest payable on any interest payment date;
- 2.2.6 the place or places where the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series shall be payable, or the method of such payment, if by wire transfer, mail or other means;
- 2.2.7 if applicable, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which the Securities of the Series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
- 2.2.8 the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase the Securities of the Series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the Series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- 2.2.9 the dates, if any, on which and the price or prices at which the Securities of the Series will be repurchased by the Company at the option of the Holders thereof and other detailed terms and provisions of such repurchase obligations;
- 2.2.10 if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the Series shall be issuable;
- 2.2.11 the forms of the Securities of the Series in bearer or fully registered form (and, if in fully registered form, whether the Securities will be issuable as Global Securities);
- 2.2.12 if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of the Securities of the Series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2;
- 2.2.13 the currency of denomination of the Securities of the Series, which may be Dollars or any Foreign Currency, including, but not limited to, the ECU, and if such currency of denomination is a composite currency other than the ECU, the agency or organization, if any, responsible for overseeing such composite currency;
- 2.2.14 the designation of the currency, currencies or currency units in which payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be made;
- 2.2.15 if payments of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series are to be made in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are denominated, the manner in which the exchange rate with respect to such payments will be determined;
- 2.2.16 the manner in which the amounts of payment of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be determined, if such amounts may be determined by reference to an index based on a currency or currencies or by reference to a commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index;

2.2.17 the provisions, if any, relating to any security provided for the Securities of the Series;

2.2.18 if the holders of Securities of the Series may convert or exchange the Securities into or for securities of the Issuer or of other entities or other property, the period or periods within which, the rate or rates at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the Series may be converted or exchanged, in whole or in part;

2.2.19 any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the Series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 6.2;

2.2.20 any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Articles IV or V which applies to Securities of the Series;

2.2.21 any other terms of the Securities of the Series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 9.1, but which may modify or delete any provision of this Indenture insofar as it applies to such Series); and

2.2.22 any depositories, interest rate calculation agents, exchange rate calculation agents or other agents with respect to Securities of such Series if other than those appointed herein.

All Securities of any one Series need not be issued at the same time and may be issued from time to time, consistent with the terms of this Indenture, if so provided by or pursuant to the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers' Certificate referred to above, and the authorized principal amount of any Series may not be increased to provide for issuances of additional Securities of such Series, unless otherwise provided in such Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers' Certificate.

Section 2.3 Execution and Authentication.

Two Officers shall sign the Securities for the Company by manual or facsimile signature.

If an Officer whose signature is on a Security no longer holds that office at the time the Security is authenticated, the Security shall nevertheless be valid.

A Security shall not be valid until authenticated by the manual signature of the Trustee or an authenticating agent. The signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security has been authenticated under this Indenture.

The Trustee shall at any time, and from time to time, authenticate Securities for original issue in the principal amount provided in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate, upon receipt by the Trustee of a Company Order. Such Company Order may authorize authentication and delivery pursuant to electronic instructions from the Company or its duly authorized agent or agents, which instructions shall be promptly confirmed in writing. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities of any Series outstanding at any time may not exceed any limit upon the maximum principal amount for such Series set forth in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2, except as provided in Section 2.8.

Prior to the issuance of Securities of any Series, the Trustee shall have received and (subject to Section 7.2) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying on: (a) the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate establishing the form of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series and the terms of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series, (b) an Officers' Certificate complying with Section 10.4, and (c) an Opinion of Counsel complying with Section 10.4 and stating that (i) the form and terms of

the Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture, and (ii) such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified therein, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights and by general principles of equity.

The Trustee shall have the right to decline to authenticate and deliver any Securities of such Series: (a) if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken; or (b) if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors or trustees, executive committee or a trust committee of or a committee of its Responsible Officers shall determine that such action would expose the Trustee to personal liability to Holders of any then outstanding Series of Securities.

The Trustee may appoint an authenticating agent acceptable to the Company to authenticate Securities. An authenticating agent may authenticate Securities whenever the Trustee may do so. Each reference in this Indenture to authentication by the Trustee includes authentication by such agent. An authenticating agent has the same rights as an Agent to deal with the Company or an Affiliate.

Section 2.4 Agents.

The Company shall maintain, with respect to each Series of Securities, at the place or places specified with respect to such Series pursuant to Section 2.2, an office or agency where Securities of such Series may be presented or surrendered for payment ("Paying Agent"), where Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange ("Registrar") and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served ("Service Agent"). The Registrar shall keep a register with respect to each Series of Securities and of their transfer and exchange. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the name and address, and any change in the name or address, of each Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the name and address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more co-registrars, additional paying agents or additional service agents and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligations to maintain a Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent in each place so specified pursuant to Section 2.2 for Securities of any Series for such purposes and provided further that there shall be only one registration book for a Series of Securities. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the name or address of any such co-registrar, additional paying agent or additional service agent. The term "Registrar" includes any co-registrar; the term "Paying Agent" includes any additional paying agent; and the term "Service Agent" includes any additional service agent.

The Company hereby appoints the Trustee the initial Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent for each Series unless another Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent, as the case may be, is appointed prior to the time Securities of that Series are first issued.

Section 2.5 Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust.

The Company shall require each Paying Agent other than the Trustee to agree in writing that the Paying Agent will hold in trust, for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities, or the Trustee, all money held by the Paying Agent for the payment of principal of or interest on the Series of Securities, and will notify the Trustee of any default by the Company in making any such payment. While any such default continues, the Trustee may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. The Company at any time may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. Upon payment over to the Trustee, the Paying Agent (if other than the Company or a Subsidiary) shall have no further liability for the money. If the Company or a Subsidiary acts as Paying Agent, it shall segregate and hold in a separate trust fund for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities all money held by it as Paying Agent.

Section 2.6 Securityholder Lists.

The Trustee shall preserve in as current a form as is reasonably practicable the most recent list available to it of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities and shall otherwise comply with TIA Section 312(a). If the Trustee is not the Registrar, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee at least ten days before each interest payment date and at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing a list, in such form and as of such date as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities.

Section 2.7 Transfer and Exchange.

Where Securities of a Series are presented to the Registrar or a co-registrar with a request to register a transfer or to exchange them for an equal principal amount of Securities of the same Series, the Registrar shall register the transfer or make the exchange if its requirements for such transactions are met. To permit registrations of transfers and exchanges, the Trustee shall authenticate Securities at the Registrar's request. No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange (except as otherwise expressly permitted herein), but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable in connection therewith (other than any such transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable upon exchanges pursuant to Sections 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6).

Neither the Company nor the Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, register the transfer of, or exchange Securities of any Series for the period beginning at the opening of business fifteen days immediately preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of that Series selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (b) to register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any Series selected, called or being called for redemption as a whole or the portion being redeemed of any such Securities selected, called or being called for redemption in part.

Section 2.8 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any Series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that Series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 2.9 Outstanding Securities.

The Securities outstanding at any time are all the Securities authenticated by the Trustee except for those canceled by it, those delivered to it for cancellation, those reductions in the interest on a Global Security effected by the Trustee in accordance with the provisions hereof and those described in this Section as not outstanding.

If a Security is replaced pursuant to Section 2.8, it ceases to be outstanding until the Trustee receives proof satisfactory to it that the replaced Security is held by a bona fide purchaser.

If the Paying Agent (other than the Company, a Subsidiary or an Affiliate of any thereof) holds on the Maturity of Securities of a Series money sufficient to pay such Securities payable on that date, then on and after that date such Securities of the Series cease to be outstanding and interest on them ceases to accrue.

A Security does not cease to be outstanding because the Company or an Affiliate holds the Security.

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the principal amount of a Discount Security that shall be deemed to be outstanding for such purposes shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of such determination upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

Section 2.10 Treasury Securities.

In determining whether the Holders of the required principal amount of Securities of a Series have concurred in any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver Securities of a Series owned by the Company or an Affiliate shall be disregarded, except that for the purposes of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in conclusively relying on any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver only Securities of a Series that the Trustee knows are so owned shall be so disregarded.

Section 2.11 Temporary Securities.

Until definitive Securities are ready for delivery, the Company may prepare and the Trustee shall authenticate temporary Securities upon a Company Order. Temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of definitive Securities but may have variations that the Company considers appropriate for temporary Securities. Without unreasonable delay, the Company shall prepare and the Trustee upon request shall authenticate definitive Securities of the same Series and date of maturity in exchange for temporary Securities. Until so exchanged, temporary securities shall have the same rights under this Indenture as the definitive Securities.

Section 2.12 Cancellation.

The Company at any time may deliver Securities to the Trustee for cancellation. The Registrar and the Paying Agent shall forward to the Trustee any Securities surrendered to them for registration of transfer, exchange or payment. The Trustee shall cancel all Securities surrendered for transfer, exchange, payment, replacement or cancellation and shall dispose of such canceled Securities (subject to the record retention requirement of the Exchange Act) in accordance with the Trustee's then standard provisions and, upon the written request of the Company, deliver a certificate of such disposition to the Company. The Company may not issue new Securities to replace Securities that it has paid or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, except as otherwise provided for in this Indenture.

Section 2.13 Defaulted Interest.

If the Company defaults in a payment of interest on a Series of Securities, it shall pay the defaulted interest, plus, to the extent permitted by law, any interest payable on the defaulted interest, to the Persons who are Securityholders of the Series on a subsequent special record date. The Company shall fix the record date and payment date. At least 30 days before the record date, the Company shall mail to the Trustee and to each Securityholder of the Series a notice that states the record date, the payment date and the amount of interest to be paid. The Company may pay defaulted interest in any other lawful manner.

Section 2.14 Global Securities.

2.14.1 **Terms of Securities.** A Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate shall establish whether the Securities of a Series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and the Depositary for such Global Security or Securities.

2.14.2 **Transfer and Exchange.** Notwithstanding any provisions to the contrary contained in Section 2.7 of the Indenture and in addition thereto, any Global Security shall be exchangeable pursuant to Section 2.7 of the Indenture for Securities registered in the names of Holders other than the Depositary for such Security or its nominee only if (i) such Depositary notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such Global Security or if at any time such Depositary ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and, in either case, the Company fails to appoint a successor Depositary within 90 days of such event, (ii) the Company executes and delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that such Global Security shall be so exchangeable or (iii) an Event of Default with respect to the Securities represented by such Global Security shall have happened and be continuing. Any Global Security that is exchangeable pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be exchangeable for Securities registered in such names as the Depositary shall direct in writing in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security with like tenor and terms.

Except as provided in this Section 2.14.2, a Global Security may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depositary with respect to such Global Security to a nominee of such Depositary, by a nominee of such Depositary to such Depositary or another nominee of such Depositary or by the Depositary or any such nominee to a successor Depositary or a nominee of such a successor Depositary.

2.14.3 **Legend.** Unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 2.2, any Global Security issued hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

“This Security is a Global Security within the meaning of the Indenture hereinafter referred to and is registered in the name of the Depositary or a nominee of the Depositary. This Security is exchangeable for Securities registered in the name of a Person other than the Depositary or its nominee only in the limited circumstances described in the Indenture, and may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depositary to a nominee of the Depositary, by a nominee of the Depositary to the Depositary or another nominee of the Depositary or by the Depositary or any such nominee to a successor Depositary or a nominee of such a successor Depositary.”

2.14.4 **Acts of Holders.** The Depositary, as a Holder, may appoint agents and otherwise authorize participants to give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which a Holder is entitled to give or take under the Indenture.

2.14.5 **Payments.** Notwithstanding the other provisions of this Indenture, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.2, payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on any Global Security shall be made to the Holder thereof.

2.14.6 **Consents, Declaration and Directions.** With respect to a Global Security, the Depositary may be treated by the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee as the absolute owner of the Global Security for all purposes whatsoever. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by the Depositary or impair, as between the Depositary and its agent members, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of a holder of any Note.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner in a Global Security, any Depository participant or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of the Depository or its nominee or of any Depository participant, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any Depository participant, beneficial owner or other Person (other than the Depository) of any notice (including any notice of redemption) or the payment of any amount, under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Securityholders and all payments to be made to Securityholders under the Securities and this Indenture shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered holders (which shall be the Depository or its nominee in the case of the Global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in the Global Security shall be exercised only through the Depository subject to the applicable procedures. The Trustee and each Agent shall be entitled to rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by the Depository with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners. The Trustee and each Agent shall be entitled to deal with the Depository, and any nominee thereof, that is the registered holder of any Global Security for all purposes of this Indenture relating to such Global Security (including the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest and additional amounts, if any, and the giving of instructions or directions by or to the owner or holder of a beneficial ownership interest in such Global Security) as the sole holder of such Global Security and shall have no obligations to the beneficial owners thereof. None of the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any responsibility or liability for any acts or omissions of the Depository with respect to such Global Security, for the records of any such depository, including records in respect of beneficial ownership interests in respect of any such Global Security, for any transactions between the Depository and any Depository participant or between or among the Depository, any such Depository participant and/or any holder or owner of a beneficial interest in such Global Security, or for any transfers of beneficial interests in any such Global Security.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, or any agent of the Company or the Trustee from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any Depository (or its nominee), as a Holder, with respect to such Global Security or shall impair, as between such Depository and owners of beneficial interests in such Global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such Depository (or its nominee) as Holder of such Global Security.

2.14.7 Trustee Protections. Each Holder of a Security agrees to indemnify the Company and the Trustee against any liability that may result from the transfer, exchange or assignment of such Holder's Security in violation of any provision of this Indenture and/or applicable United States Federal or state securities law.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among Depository participants, members or beneficial owners of interests in any Global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent, nor any agent thereof, shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by the Depository.

Section 2.15 CUSIP Numbers.

The Company in issuing the Securities may use CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other elements of identification printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company will promptly notify the Trustee in writing of any change in the CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers.

ARTICLE III
REDEMPTION

Section 3.1 Notice to Trustee.

The Company may, with respect to any Series of Securities, reserve the right to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or may covenant to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or any part thereof prior to the Stated Maturity thereof at such time and on such terms as provided for in such Securities. If a Series of Securities is redeemable and the Company wants or is obligated to redeem prior to the Stated Maturity thereof all or part of the Series of Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, it shall notify the Trustee in writing of the redemption date and the principal amount of Series of Securities to be redeemed. The Company shall give the notice at least 45 days before the redemption date (or such shorter notice as may be acceptable to the Trustee).

Section 3.2 Selection of Securities to be Redeemed.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, if less than all the Securities of a Series are to be redeemed, the Notes shall be selected by lot, pro rata or by such other method that the Trustee deems fair and appropriate (provided that, in the case of Global Notes, the Depositary may select beneficial interests in Global Notes for redemption pursuant to its applicable procedures). The Notes shall be selected from Securities of the Series outstanding not previously called for redemption. Portions of Notes may be selected for redemption of the principal of Securities of the Series that have denominations larger than \$1,000. Securities of the Series and portions of them selected shall be in amounts of \$1,000 or whole multiples of \$1,000 or, with respect to Securities of any Series issuable in other denominations pursuant to Section 2.2.10, the minimum principal denomination for each Series and integral multiples thereof. Provisions of this Indenture that apply to Securities of a Series called for redemption also apply to portions of Securities of that Series called for redemption.

Section 3.3 Notice of Redemption.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, at least 30 days but not more than 90 days before a redemption date, the Company shall, by mail or, in the case of Global Securities, in accordance with the rules of the applicable Depositary, give a notice of redemption to each Holder whose Securities are to be redeemed and if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish on one occasion a notice in an Authorized Newspaper.

The notice shall identify the Securities of the Series to be redeemed (including the CUSIP numbers thereof) and shall state:

- (a) the redemption date;
- (b) the redemption price;
- (c) the name and address of the Paying Agent;
- (d) that Securities of the Series called for redemption must be surrendered to the Paying Agent to collect the redemption price;
- (e) that, unless the Company defaults in making such redemption payment or the Paying agent is prohibited from making such payment pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, interest on Securities of the Series called for redemption ceases to accrue on and after the redemption date
- (f) list the CUSIP number of the Securities and state that no representation is made as to the correctness or accuracy of the CUSIP number, if any, listed in such notice or printed on the Securities; and

(g) any other information as may be required by the terms of the particular Series or the Securities of a Series being redeemed.

At the Company's written request and provision of the form of notice of redemption, the Trustee shall give the notice of redemption in the Company's name and at the Company's expense.

Section 3.4 Effect of Notice of Redemption.

Once notice of redemption is mailed or published as provided in Section 3.3, Securities of a Series called for redemption become due and payable on the redemption date and at the redemption price. A notice of redemption may not be conditional. Upon surrender to the Paying Agent, such Securities shall be paid at the redemption price plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

Section 3.5 Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or before the redemption date, the Company shall deposit with the Paying Agent money sufficient to pay the redemption price of and accrued interest, if any, on all Securities to be redeemed on that date.

Section 3.6 Securities Redeemed in Part.

Upon surrender of a Security that is redeemed in part, the Trustee shall authenticate for the Holder a new Security of the same Series and the same maturity equal in principal amount to the unredeemed portion of the Security surrendered.

ARTICLE IV

COVENANTS

Section 4.1 Payment of Principal and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of that Series in accordance with the terms of such Securities and this Indenture.

Section 4.2 SEC Reports.

The Company shall file with the Trustee within 15 days after it files them with the SEC copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports which the Company is required to file with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act. The Company will cause quarterly and annual reports which it makes available to its stockholders to be mailed to the Holders of each Series of Securities. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of TIA Section 314(a).

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute actual or constructive knowledge or notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

Section 4.3 Compliance Certificate.

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 105 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company, a brief certificate signed by the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company, as to the signer's knowledge of the Company's compliance with all conditions and covenants contained in this Indenture (determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided herein).

The Company will, so long as any of the Securities are outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, forthwith upon, and in any event within 15 calendar days after, becoming aware of any Default or Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate specifying such Default or Event of Default and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

Section 4.4 Corporate Existence.

Subject to Article V, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence and the rights (charter and statutory), licenses and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right, license or franchise, if the Board of Directors shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Subsidiaries taken as a whole and that the loss thereof is not adverse in any material respect to the Holders.

Section 4.5 Taxes.

The Company shall pay prior to delinquency all taxes, assessments and governmental levies, except as contested in good faith and by appropriate proceedings.

ARTICLE V

SUCCESSORS

Section 5.1 When Company May Merge, Etc.

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge with or into any other [corporation][Person] or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to, any [corporation][Person] (a "successor Person"), unless:

either:

(1) the Company shall be the surviving or continuing [corporation][Person] or (2)(a) the successor Person formed by or surviving such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance, transfer or lease the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be a [corporation][Person] organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America or any State or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by a supplemental indenture hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

- (a) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (b) (c) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance, transfer or lease and such supplemental indenture, if any, comply with this Article and that all the proposed transaction and such supplemental indenture comply with this Indenture and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 5.2 Successor Corporation Substituted.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any sale, lease, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 5.1, the successor corporation formed by such consolidation or into or with which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made

shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person has been named as the Company herein; provided, however, that the predecessor Company in the case of a conveyance, transfer or lease shall not be released from its obligations under the Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE VI

DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.1 Events of Default.

“Event of Default,” wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any Series, means any one of the following events, unless in the establishing Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers’ Certificate, it is provided that such Series shall not have the benefit of said Event of Default:

- (a) default in the payment of any interest on any Security of that Series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 90 days (unless the entire amount of such payment is deposited by the Company with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent for payment of such interest prior to the expiration of such period of 90 days); or
- (b) default in the payment of the principal of any Security of that Series at its Maturity; or
- (c) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due in respect of any Security of that Series; or
- (d) default in the performance or breach of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty that has been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of Series of Securities other than that Series), which default continues uncured for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or
- (e) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:
 - (i) commences a voluntary case,
 - (ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case,
 - (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property,
 - (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, or
 - (v) generally is unable to pay its debts as the same become due; or
- (f) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law that:
 - (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case,
 - (ii) appoints a Custodian for the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or

(iii) orders the liquidation of the Company and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days; or

(g) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that Series, which is specified in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, in accordance with Section 2.2.19.

The term "Bankruptcy Law" means title 11, U.S. Code or any similar Federal or State law for the relief of debtors. The term "Custodian" means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

Section 6.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series at the time outstanding occurs and is continuing (other than an Event of Default referred to in Section 6.1(e) or (f)) then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities of that Series are Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such Securities) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all of the Securities of that Series to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(e) or (f) shall occur, the principal amount (or specified amount) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all outstanding Securities shall ipso facto become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or any Holder.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to any Series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(a) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:

(i) all overdue interest, if any, on all Securities of that Series,

(ii) the principal of any Securities of that Series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(iii) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon any overdue principal and overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(iv) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and

(b) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that Series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that Series which have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 6.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if:

- (a) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 90 days, or
- (b) default is made in the payment of principal of any Security at the Maturity thereof, or
- (c) default is made in the deposit of any sinking fund payment when and as due by the terms of a Security, then, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal or any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or deemed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to any Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 6.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

- (a) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, fees, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

- (b) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same, and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, fees, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 7.7.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding.

Section 6.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 6.6 Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article or, after an Event of Default, any money or other property distributable in respect of the Company's obligations under this Indenture shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money or property on account of principal or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

First: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee (including any predecessor trustee) under Section 7.7; and

Second: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and interest, respectively; and

Third: To the Company or as a court of competent jurisdiction in a final non-appealable decision may direct.

Section 6.7 Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any Series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (a) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that Series;
- (b) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (c) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity and/or security satisfactory to it in its sole discretion against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (d) the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity and/or security has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (e) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 90-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any

right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all such Holders (it being understood that the Trustee does not have an affirmative duty to ascertain whether or not such actions or forbearances are unduly prejudicial to such Holders).

Section 6.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on such Security on the Stated Maturity or Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the redemption date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 6.9 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 6.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in Section 2.8, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 6.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 6.12 Control by Holders.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that:

- (a) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or unduly prejudicial to the rights of other Holders (it being understood that the Trustee shall be under no obligation to determine whether such direction is prejudicial to the rights of other Holders),
- (b) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction, and
- (c) subject to the provisions of Section 6.1, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability.

Section 6.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.

Subject to Section 6.2, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such Series waive any past Default hereunder with respect to such Series and its consequences, except a Default in the payment of the principal of or interest on any Security of such Series (provided, however, that the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series may rescind an acceleration and its consequences, including any related payment default that resulted from such acceleration). Upon any such waiver, such Default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.14 Undertaking for Costs.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by its acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Holder, or group of Holders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series, or to any suit instituted by any Holder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of or interest on any Security on or after the Stated Maturity or Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the redemption date).

ARTICLE VII

TRUSTEE

Section 7.1 Duties of Trustee.

(a) In case an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs.

(b) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:

(i) the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts, statements, opinions or conclusions stated therein).

(c) The Trustee may not be relieved from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this paragraph does not limit the effect of paragraphs (b) or (g) of this Section;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it is proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts; and

(iii) The Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it with respect to Securities of any Series in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such Series.

(d) Every provision of this Indenture that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to this Section.

(e) The Trustee may refuse to perform any duty or exercise any right or power unless it receives indemnity and/or security reasonably satisfactory to it against any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense.

(f) The Trustee shall not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Company. Money held in trust by the Trustee need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

(g) No provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

(h) The Agents shall be entitled to the protections and immunities as are set forth in this Article with respect to the Trustee.

Section 7.2 Rights of Trustee.

Subject to the provisions of Section 601:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties.

(b) Before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officers' Certificate and/or an Opinion of Counsel. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel.

(c) The Trustee may act through agents or attorneys and shall not be responsible for the misconduct or negligence of any agent appointed with due care. No Depository shall be deemed an agent of the Trustee and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any act or omission by any Depository.

(d) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes, suffers or omits to take in good faith which it believes to be authorized or within its rights or powers.

(e) The Trustee may consult with counsel of its selection and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(f) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security and/or indemnity satisfactory to it in its sole discretion against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction.

(g) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, at reasonable times during normal business hours, personally or by agent or attorney at the sole cost of the Company and shall incur no liability or additional liability of any kind by reason of such inquiry or investigation.

(h) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder.

(i) In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action.

(j) The Trustee may request that the Company deliver a certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

(k) Any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order] and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution.

(l) The permissive right of the Trustee to take or refrain from taking action hereunder shall not be construed as a duty.

(m) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, the Trustee shall be entitled to make a deduction or withholding from any payment which it makes under this Indenture for or on account of any present or future taxes, duties or charges if and to the extent so required by any applicable law and any current or future regulations or agreements thereunder or official interpretations thereof or any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto or by virtue of the relevant holder failing to satisfy any certification or other requirements in respect of the Securities, in which event the Trustee shall make such payment after such withholding or deduction has been made and shall account to the relevant authorities for the amount so withheld or deducted and shall have no obligation to gross up any payment hereunder or pay any additional amount as a result of such withholding tax.

In addition, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice or be charged with knowledge of any Default or Event of Default unless written notice of such Default or Event of Default from the Company or any Holders is received by a Responsible Officer of Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office in the manner set forth in this Indenture, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture. Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under Section 4.2 is for informational purposes only and the information and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute actual or constructive knowledge or notice of any information contained therein, or determinable from information contained therein including the Company's compliance with any of their covenants thereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on an Officers' Certificate).

Section 7.3 Individual Rights of Trustee.

The Trustee in its individual or any other capacity may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Company or an Affiliate with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee. Any Agent may do the same with like rights. The Trustee is also subject to Sections 7.10 and 7.11.

Section 7.4 Trustee's Disclaimer.

The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities, it shall not be accountable for the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities, and it shall not be responsible for any recital or statement contained herein and in the Securities other than its certificates of authentication, and the Trustee or any Agent assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee shall not be responsible to make any calculation with respect to any matter under this Indenture. The Trustee shall have no duty to monitor or investigate the Company's compliance with or the breach of, or cause to be performed or observed, any representation, warranty, or covenant, or agreement of any Person, other than the Trustee, made in this Indenture.

Section 7.5 Notice of Defaults.

If a Default or Event of Default occurs and is continuing with respect to the Securities of any Series and if it is known to the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder of the Securities of that Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper, notice of a Default or Event of Default within 90 days after it occurs or, if later, after the Trustee has knowledge of such Default or Event of Default. Except in the case of a Default or Event of Default in payment of principal of or interest on any Security of any Series, the Trustee may withhold the notice if and so long as its corporate trust committee or a committee of its Responsible Officers in good faith determines that withholding the notice is in the interests of Securityholders of that Series.

Section 7.6 Reports by Trustee to Holders.

Within 60 days after May 15 in each year commencing May 15, , the Trustee shall transmit to all Securityholders, and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish in an Authorized Newspaper, a brief report dated as of such May 15, in accordance with, and to the extent required under, TIA Section 313.

A copy of each report at the time of its mailing to Securityholders of any Series shall be filed with the SEC and each stock exchange on which the Securities of that Series are listed. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee when Securities of any Series are listed on any stock exchange.

Section 7.7 Compensation and Indemnity.

The Company shall pay to the Trustee from time to time such compensation for its services as shall be agreed from time to time in writing. The Trustee's compensation shall not be limited by any law on compensation of a trustee of an express trust. The Company shall reimburse the Trustee upon request for all reasonable disbursements, advances and expenses incurred by the Trustee, including the reasonable compensation and expenses of the Trustee's agents and counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ.

The Company shall indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee (including the cost of defending itself) for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense , including fees and expenses of counsel, including taxes (other than taxes based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred by them except as set forth in the next paragraph , arising out of or in connection with this Indenture, the Securities of any Series, the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, or any Holder or any other Person) or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder, or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section. The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any claim for which it may seek indemnity; *provided*, however, that the Trustee shall not incur any liability if it fails to so notify and any failure by the Trustee to so notify the Company will not relieve the Company of its obligations

hereunder. The Company shall defend the claim and the Trustee shall cooperate in the defense. The Trustee may have separate counsel and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. The Company need not pay for any settlement made without its consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. This indemnification shall apply to officers, directors, employees, shareholders and agents of the Trustee.

The Company need not reimburse any expense or indemnify against any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense incurred by the Trustee determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to have been through its own gross negligence or willful misconduct.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any Series upon all money, property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on particular Securities of that Series.

In addition to, but without prejudice to its other rights under this Indenture, when the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Sections 6.1(e) or (f), the expenses (including the reasonable charges and expenses of its counsel) and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any Bankruptcy Law.

“Trustee” for purposes of this Section shall include any predecessor Trustee; provided, however, that the negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith of any Trustee hereunder shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee hereunder.

The obligations of the Company in this Section 7.7 shall survive the termination for any reason of this Indenture, the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or resignation or removal of the Trustee.

Section 7.8 Replacement of Trustee.

A resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor Trustee shall become effective only upon the successor Trustee’s acceptance of appointment as provided in this Section.

The Trustee may resign with respect to the Securities of one or more Series by so notifying the Company. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any Series may remove the Trustee with respect to that Series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company in writing. The Company may remove the Trustee with respect to Securities of one or more Series if:

- (a) the Trustee fails to comply with Section 7.10;
- (b) the Trustee is adjudged a bankrupt or an insolvent or an order for relief is entered with respect to the Trustee under any Bankruptcy Law;
- (c) a Custodian or public officer takes charge of the Trustee or its property; or
- (d) the Trustee becomes incapable of acting.

If the Trustee resigns or is removed or if a vacancy exists in the office of Trustee for any reason, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee. Within one year after the successor Trustee takes office, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding Securities may appoint a successor Trustee to replace the successor Trustee appointed by the Company.

If a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any one or more Series does not take office within 30 days after the retiring Trustee resigns or is removed, the retiring Trustee, the Company or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Securities of the applicable Series may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

If the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any one or more Series fails to comply with Section 7.10, any Securityholder of the applicable Series may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor Trustee.

A successor Trustee shall deliver a written acceptance of its appointment to the retiring Trustee and to the Company. Immediately after that, the retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges and all other amounts payable to it hereunder, transfer all property held by it as Trustee to the successor Trustee subject to the lien provided for in Section 7.7, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective, and the successor Trustee shall have all the rights, powers and duties of the Trustee with respect to each Series of Securities for which it is acting as Trustee under this Indenture. A successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to each Securityholder of each such Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish such notice on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper. Notwithstanding replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 7.8, the Company's obligations under, and the lien provided for in, Section 7.7 hereof shall continue for the benefit of the retiring trustee with respect to expenses and liabilities incurred by it prior to such replacement.

Section 7.9 Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.

If the Trustee consolidates with, merges or converts into, or transfers all or substantially all of its corporate trust business to, another Person, the successor Person without any further act shall be the successor Trustee.

Section 7.10 Eligibility; Disqualification.

This Indenture shall always have a Trustee who satisfies the requirements of TIA Section 310(a) (1), (2) and (5). The Trustee shall always have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$25,000,000 as set forth in its most recent published annual report of condition. The Trustee shall comply with TIA Section 310(b); provided, however, that there shall be excluded from the operation of Section 310(b)(i) of the TIA any Securities of any other series or any indenture or indentures under which other securities or certificates of interest or participation in other securities of the Company are outstanding if the requirements for such exclusion set forth in Section 310(b)(i) of the TIA are met. If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the TIA, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the TIA and this Indenture.

Section 7.11 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.

The Trustee is subject to TIA Section 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA Section 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent indicated.

ARTICLE VIII

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

Section 8.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

This Indenture shall upon Company Order cease to be of further effect (except as hereinafter provided in this Section 8.1), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when:

(a) either:

(i) all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than Securities that have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that have been replaced or paid) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

- (ii) all such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation:
 - (1) have become due and payable, or
 - (2) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or
 - (3) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, or
 - (4) are deemed paid and discharged pursuant to Section 8.3, as applicable;

and the Company, in the case of (1), (2) or (3) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust an amount sufficient, without reinvestment, for the purpose of paying and discharging the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable on or prior to the date of such deposit) or to the Stated Maturity or redemption date, as the case may be;

(b) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(c) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 7.7, and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to clause (a) of this Section, the provisions of Sections 2.4, 2.7, 2.8, 8.1, 8.2 and 8.5 shall survive.

Section 8.2 Application of Trust Funds; Indemnification.

(a) Subject to the provisions of Section 8.5, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.1, all money and U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.3 or 8.4 and all money received by the Trustee in respect of U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.3 or 8.4, shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with or received by the Trustee or to make mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments as contemplated by Sections 8.3 or 8.4.

(b) The Company shall pay and shall indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Sections 8.3 or 8.4 or the interest and principal received in respect of such obligations other than any payable by or on behalf of Holders.

(c) The Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations or money held by it as provided in Sections 8.3 or 8.4 which are then in excess of the amount thereof which then would have been required to be deposited for the purpose for which such U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations or money were deposited or received. This provision shall not authorize the sale by the Trustee of any U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations held under this Indenture.

Section 8.3 Legal Defeasance of Securities of any Series.

Unless this Section 8.3 is otherwise specified, pursuant to Section 2.2.21, to be inapplicable to Securities of any Series, the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness on all the outstanding Securities of such Series on the 91st day after the date of the deposit referred to in subparagraph (d) hereof, and the provisions of this Indenture, as it relates to such outstanding Securities of such Series, shall no longer be in effect (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall, at Company Request, execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except as to:

(a) the rights of Holders of Securities of such Series to receive, from the trust funds described in subparagraph (d) hereof, (i) payment of the principal of and each installment of principal of and interest on the outstanding Securities of such Series on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest and (ii) the benefit of any mandatory sinking fund payments applicable to the Securities of such Series on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and the Securities of such Series;

(b) the provisions of Sections 2.4, 2.7, 2.8, 8.2, 8.3 and 8.5; and

(c) the rights, powers, trust and immunities of the Trustee hereunder; provided that, the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(d) the Company shall have deposited or caused to be deposited irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for and dedicated solely to the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (i) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in Dollars, cash in Dollars (or such other money or currencies as shall then be legal tender in the United States) and/or U.S. Government Obligations, or (ii) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in a Foreign Currency (other than a composite currency), money and/or Foreign Government Obligations, which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof, in accordance with their terms, will provide (and without reinvestment and assuming no tax liability will be imposed on such Trustee), not later than one Business Day before the due date of any payment of money, an amount in cash[and/or U.S. Government Obligations and/or Foreign Government Obligations, as applicable], sufficient, without reinvestment, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge each installment of principal (including mandatory sinking fund or analogous payments) of and interest, if any, on all the Securities of such Series on the dates such installments of interest or principal are due;

(e) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound;

(f) no Default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such Series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or during the period ending on the 91st day after such date;

(g) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that (i) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (ii) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of the Securities of such Series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred;

(h) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of the Securities of such Series over any other creditors of the company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any other creditors of the Company;

(i) such deposit shall not result in the trust arising from such deposit constituting an investment company (as defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended), or such trust shall be qualified under such Act or exempt from regulation thereunder; and

(j) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section have been complied with.

Section 8.4 Covenant Defeasance.

Unless this Section 8.4 is otherwise specified pursuant to Section 2.2.21 to be inapplicable to Securities of any Series, on and after the 91st day after the date of the deposit referred to in subparagraph (a) hereof, the Company may omit to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth under Sections 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, and 5.1 as well as any additional covenants contained in a supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series of Securities or a Board Resolution or an Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2.21 (and the failure to comply with any such covenants shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default under Section 6.1) and the occurrence of any event described in clause (e) of Section 6.1 shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default hereunder, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(a) With reference to this Section 8.4, the Company has deposited or caused to be irrevocably deposited (except as provided in Section 8.2(c)) with the Trustee as trust funds in trust, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (i) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in Dollars, cash in Dollars (or such other money or currencies as shall then be legal tender in the United States) and/or U.S. Government Obligations, or (ii) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in a Foreign Currency (other than a composite currency), money and/or Foreign Government Obligations, which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof, in accordance with their terms, will provide (and without reinvestment and assuming no tax liability will be imposed on such Trustee), not later than one day before the due date of any payment of money, an amount in cash, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent certified public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay principal and interest, if any, on and any mandatory sinking fund in respect of the Securities of such Series on the dates such installments of interest or principal are due;

(b) Such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound;

(c) No Default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such Series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or during the period ending on the 91st day after such date;

(d) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that Holders of the Securities of such Series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred;

(e) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of the Securities of such Series over any other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any other creditors of the Company; and

(f) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section have been complied with.

Section 8.5 Repayment to Company.

The Trustee and the Paying Agent shall pay to the Company upon request any money held by them for the payment of principal and interest that remains unclaimed for two years or such other shorter period set forth in applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law. After that, Securityholders entitled to the money must look to the Company for payment as general creditors unless an applicable abandoned property law designates another Person.

Section 8.6 Reinstatement.

If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money or U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with Sections 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be, by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company's obligations under this Indenture and the Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money or U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with Section 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of, premium, if any, or interest on any Securities because of reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money or U.S. Government Obligations held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE IX

AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS

Section 9.1 Without Consent of Holders.

The Company and the Trustee may amend this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series without the consent of any Securityholder:

- (a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, mistake or inconsistency;
- (b) to comply with Article V;
- (c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (d) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;
- (e) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of Securities of any Series as permitted by this Indenture;
- (f) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more Series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee; or
- (g) to comply with requirements of the SEC in order to effect or maintain the qualification of this Indenture under the TIA.

After any amendment under this Article becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Securityholders a notice briefly describing such amendment; provided, however, that the failure to give such notice to all Securityholders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment under this Article.

Section 9.2 With Consent of Holders.

The Company and the Trustee may enter into a supplemental indenture with the written consent of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such supplemental indenture (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series), for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Securityholders of each such Series. Except as provided in Section 6.13, the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such waiver by notice to the Trustee (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series) may waive compliance by the Company with any provision of this Indenture or the Securities with respect to such Series.

Without the consent of each Securityholder affected, an amendment or waiver may not:

- (a) change the amount of Securities whose Holders must consent to an amendment, supplement or waiver;
- (b) reduce the rate of or extend the time for payment of interest (including default interest) on any Security;
- (c) reduce the principal or change the Stated Maturity of any Security or reduce the amount of, or postpone the date fixed for, the payment of any sinking fund or analogous obligation;
- (d) reduce the principal amount of Discount Securities payable upon acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- (e) waive a Default or Event of Default in the payment of the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security (except a rescission of acceleration of the Securities of any Series by the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
- (f) make the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security payable in any currency other than that stated in the Security;
- (g) make any change in Sections 6.8, 6.13, 9.2, 10.15 or 10.16; or
- (h) waive a redemption payment with respect to any Security or change any of the provisions with respect to the redemption of any Securities.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Holders of Securities under this Section 9.2 to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture or waiver, but it shall be sufficient if such consent approves the substance thereof. After a supplemental indenture or waiver under this Section becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Holders of Securities affected thereby and, if any Bearer Securities affected thereby are outstanding, publish on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper, a notice briefly describing the supplemental indenture or waiver. Any failure by the Company to mail or publish such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture or waiver.

After any amendment under this Article becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Securityholders a notice briefly describing such amendment; provided, however, that the failure to give such notice to all Securityholders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment under this Article.

Section 9.3 [Reserved]

Section 9.4 Compliance with Trust Indenture Act.

Every amendment to this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series shall be set forth in a supplemental indenture hereto that complies with the TIA as then in effect

Section 9.5 Revocation and Effect of Consent.

Until an amendment or waiver becomes effective, a consent to it by a Holder of a Security is a continuing consent by the Holder and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security, even if notation of the consent is not made on any Security. However, any such Holder or subsequent Holder may revoke the consent as to its Security or portion of a Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the date the amendment or waiver becomes effective.

Any amendment or waiver once effective shall bind every Securityholder of each Series affected by such amendment or waiver unless it is of the type described in any of clauses (a) through (g) of Section 9.3. In that case, the amendment or waiver shall bind each Holder of a Security who has consented to it and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security.

Section 9.6 Notation on or Exchange of Securities.

The Trustee may place an appropriate notation about an amendment or waiver on any Security of any Series thereafter authenticated. The Company in exchange for Securities of that Series may issue and the Trustee shall authenticate upon request new Securities of that Series that reflect the amendment or waiver.

Section 9.7 Trustee Protected.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to Section 7.1) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such supplemental indenture is enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, subject to then customary exceptions. The Trustee shall sign all supplemental indentures, except that the Trustee need not sign any supplemental indenture that adversely affects its rights.

ARTICLE X

MISCELLANEOUS

Section 10.1 Trust Indenture Act Controls.

If any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies, or conflicts with another provision which is required or deemed to be included in this Indenture by the TIA, such required or deemed provision shall control.

Section 10.2 Notices.

Any notice or communication by the Company or the Trustee to the other is duly given if in writing and delivered in person or mailed by first-class mail:

if to the Company:

electroCore, Inc.
150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, NJ, 07920
Attention: Brian Posner, Chief Financial Officer

if to the Trustee:

The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A.
500 Ross Street, 12th Floor
Pittsburgh, PA 15262
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration – Corporate Finance Unit

The Company or the Trustee by notice to the other may designate additional or different addresses for subsequent notices or communications.

If a notice or communication is mailed or delivered in the manner provided above within the time prescribed, it is duly given, whether or not the addressee receives it, except in the case of notices or communications given to the Trustee, which shall be effective only upon actual receipt by the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office.

Any notice or communication to a Securityholder shall be mailed by first-class mail to its address shown on the register kept by the Registrar and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, published in an Authorized Newspaper. Failure to mail a notice or communication to a Securityholder of any Series or any defect in it shall not affect its sufficiency with respect to other Securityholders of that or any other Series.

If a notice or communication is mailed or published in the manner provided above, within the time prescribed, it is duly given, whether or not the Securityholder receives it.

If the Company mails a notice or communication to Securityholders, it shall mail a copy to the Trustee and each Agent at the same time.

“Electronic Means” shall mean the following communications methods: S.W.I.F.T., e-mail, facsimile transmission, secure electronic transmission containing applicable authorization codes, passwords and/or authentication keys issued by the Trustee, or another method or system specified by the Trustee as available for use in connection with its services hereunder.

The Trustee shall have the right to accept and act upon instructions, including funds transfer instructions (“Instructions”) given pursuant to this Indenture and delivered using Electronic Means; provided, however, that the Company shall provide to the Trustee an incumbency certificate listing officers with the authority to provide such Instructions (“Authorized Officers”) and containing specimen signatures of such Authorized Officers, which incumbency certificate shall be amended by the Company whenever a person is to be added or deleted from the listing. If the Company elects to give the Trustee Instructions using Electronic Means and the Trustee in its discretion elects to act upon such Instructions, the Trustee’s understanding of such Instructions shall be deemed controlling. The Company understands and agrees that the Trustee cannot determine the identity of the actual sender of such Instructions and that the Trustee shall conclusively presume that directions that purport to have been sent by an Authorized Officer listed on the incumbency certificate provided to the Trustee have been sent by such Authorized Officer. The Company shall be responsible for ensuring that only Authorized Officers transmit such Instructions to the Trustee and that the Company and all Authorized Officers are solely responsible to safeguard the use and confidentiality of applicable user and authorization codes, passwords and/or authentication keys upon receipt by the Company. The Trustee shall have no duty or obligation to verify or confirm that the person who sent such instructions or directions is, in fact, a person authorized to give instructions or directions on behalf of the Company; and the Trustee shall not be liable for any losses, liabilities, costs or expenses arising directly or indirectly from the Trustee’s reliance upon and compliance with such Instructions notwithstanding such directions conflict or are inconsistent with a subsequent written instruction. The Company agrees: (i) to assume all risks arising out of the

use of Electronic Means to submit Instructions to the Trustee, including without limitation the risk of the Trustee acting on unauthorized Instructions, and the risk of interception and misuse by third parties; (ii) that it is fully informed of the protections and risks associated with the various methods of transmitting Instructions to the Trustee and that there may be more secure methods of transmitting Instructions than the method(s) selected by the Company; (iii) that the security procedures (if any) to be followed in connection with its transmission of Instructions provide to it a commercially reasonable degree of protection in light of its particular needs and circumstances; and (iv) to notify the Trustee immediately upon learning of any compromise or unauthorized use of the security procedures.

Section 10.3 Communication by Holders with Other Holders.

Securityholders of any Series may communicate pursuant to TIA Section 312(b) with other Securityholders of that Series or any other Series with respect to their rights under this Indenture or the Securities of that Series or all Series. The Company, the Trustee, the Registrar and anyone else shall have the protection of TIA Section 312(c).

Section 10.4 Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent.

Upon any request or application by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee:

- (a) an Officers' Certificate stating that, in the opinion of the signers, all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with; and
- (b) an Opinion of Counsel stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, all such conditions precedent have been complied with.

Section 10.5 Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion.

Each certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than a certificate provided pursuant to TIA Section 314(a)(4)) shall include:

- (a) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition;
- (b) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (c) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, such Person has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable such Person to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (d) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 10.6 Rules by Trustee and Agents.

The Trustee may make reasonable rules for action by or a meeting of Securityholders of one or more Series. Any Agent may make reasonable rules and set reasonable requirements for its functions.

Section 10.7 Legal Holidays.

Unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture for a particular Series, a "Legal Holiday" is any day that is not a Business Day. If a payment date is a Legal Holiday at a place of payment, payment may be made at that place on the next succeeding day that is not a Legal Holiday, and no interest shall accrue for the intervening period.

Section 10.8 No Recourse Against Others.

A director, officer, employee or stockholder, as such, of the Company shall not have any liability for any obligations of the Company under the Securities or the Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of or by reason of such obligations or their creation. Each Securityholder by accepting a Security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 10.9 Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed shall be deemed to be an original and all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile or electronic (*i.e.*, “pdf” or “tif”) transmission shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture as to the parties hereto and may be used in lieu of the original Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile or electronic (*i.e.*, “pdf” or “tif”) transmission shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

Section 10.10 Governing Laws; Waiver of Jury Trial; Submission to Jurisdiction..

THIS INDENTURE AND THE SECURITIES SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK APPLICABLE TO AGREEMENTS MADE AND TO BE PERFORMED IN SUCH STATE. EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE, AND EACH HOLDER OF A SECURITY BY ITS ACCEPTANCE THEREOF, HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE NOTES OR THE TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

THE COMPANY IRREVOCABLY CONSENTS AND SUBMITS, FOR ITSELF AND IN RESPECT OF ANY OF ITS ASSETS OR PROPERTY, TO THE NONEXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF ANY COURT OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK OR ANY UNITED STATES FEDERAL COURT SITTING, IN EACH CASE, IN THE BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, THE CITY OF NEW YORK, NEW YORK, UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, AND ANY APPELLATE COURT FROM ANY THEREOF IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING THAT MAY BE BROUGHT IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE OR THE SECURITIES, AND WAIVES ANY IMMUNITY FROM THE JURISDICTION OF SUCH COURTS. THE COMPANY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY OBJECTION TO ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING THAT MAY BE BROUGHT IN SUCH COURTS WHETHER ON THE GROUNDS OF VENUE, RESIDENCE OR DOMICILE OR ON THE GROUND THAT ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING HAS BEEN BROUGHT IN AN INCONVENIENT FORUM. THE COMPANY AGREES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT THAT IT LAWFULLY MAY DO SO, THAT FINAL JUDGMENT IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BROUGHT IN SUCH A COURT SHALL BE CONCLUSIVE AND BINDING UPON THE COMPANY, AND WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY OBJECTION TO THE ENFORCEMENT BY ANY COMPETENT COURT IN THE COMPANY’S JURISDICTION OF ORGANIZATION OF JUDGMENTS VALIDLY OBTAINED IN ANY SUCH COURT IN NEW YORK ON THE BASIS OF SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING.

Section 10.11 No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements.

This Indenture may not be used to interpret another indenture, loan or debt agreement of the Company or a Subsidiary. Any such indenture, loan or debt agreement may not be used to interpret this Indenture.

Section 10.12 Successors.

All agreements of the Company in this Indenture and the Securities shall bind its successor. All agreements of the Trustee in this Indenture shall bind its successor.

Section 10.13 Severability.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 10.14 Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.

The Table of Contents, Cross Reference Table, and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Indenture have been inserted for convenience of reference only, are not to be considered a part hereof, and shall in no way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 10.15 Force Majeure.

In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts which are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

ARTICLE XI

SINKING FUNDS

Section 11.1 Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of the Securities of a Series, except as otherwise permitted or required by any form of Security of such Series issued pursuant to this Indenture.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of the Securities of any Series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment” and any other amount provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 11.2. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any Series as provided for by the terms of the Securities of such Series.

Section 11.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of any Series to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities (1) deliver outstanding Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable (other than any of such Securities previously called for mandatory sinking fund redemption) and (2) apply as credit Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable and which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Series of Securities (except pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund) or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments or other optional redemptions pursuant to the terms of such Securities, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received by the Trustee, together with an Officers' Certificate with respect thereto, not later than 15 days prior to the date on which the process of selecting Securities for redemption begins, and shall be credited for such purpose at the price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. If as a result of the delivery or credit of Securities in lieu of cash payments pursuant to this Section 11.2, the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed in order to exhaust the aforesaid cash payment shall be less than \$100,000, the Trustee need not call Securities of such Series for redemption, except upon receipt of a Company Order that such action be taken, and such cash payment shall be held by the Trustee or a

Paying Agent and applied to the next succeeding sinking fund payment, provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall from time to time upon receipt of a Company Order pay over and deliver to the Company any cash payment so being held by the Trustee or such Paying Agent upon delivery by the Company to the Trustee of Securities of that Series purchased by the Company having an unpaid principal amount equal to the cash payment required to be released to the Company.

Section 11.3 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 45 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate in respect of a particular Series of Securities) prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that Series pursuant to the terms of that Series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting of Securities of that Series pursuant to Section 11.2, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 30 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture in respect of a particular Series of Securities) before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.2 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.3. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

ELECTROCORE, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST
COMPANY, N.A., as Trustee**

By: _____
Name:
Title:

ELECTROCORE, INC.

and

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.,

as Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of _____ ,

Subordinated Debt Securities

[Table of Contents](#)

ELECTROCORE, INC.

Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and
Indenture, dated as of _____,

Section 310(a) (1)	7.10
(a) (2)	7.10
(a) (3)	Not Applicable
(a) (4)	Not Applicable
(a) (5)	7.10
(b)	7.10
Section 311(a)	7.11
(b)	7.11
(c)	Not Applicable
Section 312(a)	2.6
(b)	10.3
(c)	10.3
Section 313(a)	7.6
(b) (1)	7.6
(b) (2)	7.6
(c) (1)	7.6
(d)	7.6
Section 314(a)	4.2, 10.5
(b)	Not Applicable
(c) (1)	10.4
(c) (2)	10.4
(c) (3)	Not Applicable

Table of Contents

(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	10.5
(f)	Not Applicable
Section 315(a)	7.1
(b)	7.5
(c)	7.1
(d)	7.1
(e)	6.14
Section 316(a)	2.10
(a) (1)(a)	6.12
(a) (1)(b)	6.13
(b)	6.8
Section 317(a)(1)	6.3
(a)(2)	6.4
(b)	2.5
Section 318(a)	10.1

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
ARTICLE I - DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE	1
Section 1.1 Definitions	1
Section 1.2 Other Definitions	5
Section 1.3 Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act	5
Section 1.4 Rules of Construction	5
ARTICLE II - THE SECURITIES	6
Section 2.1 Issuable in Series	6
Section 2.2 Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities	6
Section 2.3 Execution and Authentication	8
Section 2.4 Registrar and Paying Agent	9
Section 2.5 Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust	9
Section 2.6 Securityholder Lists	10
Section 2.7 Transfer and Exchange	10
Section 2.8 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	10
Section 2.9 Outstanding Securities	11
Section 2.10 Treasury Securities	11
Section 2.11 Temporary Securities	11
Section 2.12 Cancellation	11
Section 2.13 Defaulted Interest	11
Section 2.14 Global Securities	12
Section 2.15 CUSIP Numbers	13
ARTICLE III - REDEMPTION	14
Section 3.1 Notice to Trustee	14
Section 3.2 Selection of Securities to be Redeemed	14
Section 3.3 Notice of Redemption	14
Section 3.4 Effect of Notice of Redemption	15

[Table of Contents](#)

	PAGE
Section 3.5 Deposit of Redemption Price	15
Section 3.6 Securities Redeemed in Part	15
ARTICLE IV - COVENANTS	15
Section 4.1 Payment of Principal and Interest	15
Section 4.2 SEC Reports	15
Section 4.3 Compliance Certificate	15
Section 4.4 Corporate Existence	16
Section 4.5 Taxes	16
ARTICLE V - SUCCESSORS	16
Section 5.1 When Company May Merge, Etc	16
Section 5.2 Successor Corporation Substituted	16
ARTICLE VI - DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES	17
Section 6.1 Events of Default	17
Section 6.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	18
Section 6.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	18
Section 6.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	19
Section 6.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	20
Section 6.6 Application of Money Collected	20
Section 6.7 Limitation on Suits	20
Section 6.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal and Interest	21
Section 6.9 Restoration of Rights and Remedies	21
Section 6.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative	21
Section 6.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver	21
Section 6.12 Control by Holders	21
Section 6.13 Waiver of Past Defaults	22
Section 6.14 Undertaking for Costs	22
ARTICLE VII - TRUSTEE	22
Section 7.1 Duties of Trustee	22

[Table of Contents](#)

	PAGE
Section 7.2 Rights of Trustee	23
Section 7.3 Individual Rights of Trustee	25
Section 7.4 Trustee’s Disclaimer	25
Section 7.5 Notice of Defaults	25
Section 7.6 Reports by Trustee to Holders	25
Section 7.7 Compensation and Indemnity	25
Section 7.8 Replacement of Trustee	26
Section 7.9 Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.	27
Section 7.10 Eligibility; Disqualification	27
Section 7.11 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	27
ARTICLE VIII - SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE	27
Section 8.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	27
Section 8.2 Application of Trust Funds; Indemnification	28
Section 8.3 Legal Defeasance of Securities of any Series	29
Section 8.4 Covenant Defeasance	30
Section 8.5 Repayment to Company	31
Section 8.6 Reinstatement	31
ARTICLE IX - AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS	31
Section 9.1 Without Consent of Holders	31
Section 9.2 With Consent of Holders	32
Section 9.3 Limitations	33
Section 9.4 Compliance with Trust Indenture Act	33
Section 9.5 Revocation and Effect of Consents	33
Section 9.6 Notation on or Exchange of Securities	33
Section 9.7 Trustee Protected	33
ARTICLE X - MISCELLANEOUS	33
Section 10.1 Trust Indenture Act Controls	33
Section 10.2 Notices	33

Table of Contents

	PAGE
Section 10.3 Communication by Holders with Other Holders	35
Section 10.4 Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent	35
Section 10.5 Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion	35
Section 10.6 Rules by Trustee and Agents	35
Section 10.7 Legal Holidays	35
Section 10.8 No Recourse Against Others	36
Section 10.9 Counterparts	36
Section 10.10 Governing Laws; Waiver of Jury Trial	36
Section 10.11 No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements	36
Section 10.12 Successors	36
Section 10.13 Severability	37
Section 10.14 Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.	37
Section 10.15 Force Majeure	37
ARTICLE XI - SINKING FUNDS	37
Section 11.1 Applicability of Article	37
Section 11.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	37
Section 11.3 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	38
ARTICLE XII - SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES	38
Section 12.1 Agreement of Subordination	38
Section 12.2 Payments to Holders	38
Section 12.3 Subrogation of Securities	40
Section 12.4 Authorization to Effect Subordination	41
Section 12.5 Notice to Trustee	41
Section 12.6 Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness	42
Section 12.7 No Impairment of Subordination	42
Section 12.8 Article Applicable to Paying Agents	42
Section 12.9 Senior Indebtedness Entitled to Rely	42

[Table of Contents](#)

INDENTURE, dated as of _____, between electroCore, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., a national banking association, as trustee (the “Trustee”).

Each party agrees as follows for the benefit of the other party and for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities issued under this Indenture.

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

Section 1.1 Definitions.

“Additional Amounts” means any additional amounts which are required hereby or by any Security, under circumstances specified herein or therein, to be paid by the Company in respect of certain taxes imposed on Holders specified therein and which are owing to such Holders.

“Affiliate” of any specified person means any other person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” (including, with correlative meanings, the terms “controlled by” and “under common control with”), as used with respect to any person, shall mean the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such person, whether through the ownership of voting securities or by agreement or otherwise.

“Agent” means any Registrar, Paying Agent, Service Agent or authenticating agent.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper in an official language of the country of publication customarily published at least once a day for at least five days in each calendar week and of general circulation in the place in connection with which the term is used. If it shall be impractical to make any publication of any notice required hereby in an Authorized Newspaper, any publication or other notice in lieu thereof that is made or given by the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient publication of such notice.

“Bearer” means anyone in possession from time to time of a Bearer Security.

“Board of Directors” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee thereof.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been adopted by the Board of Directors or pursuant to authorization by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of the certificate, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series, any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in The City of New York on which banking institutions are authorized or required by law, regulation or executive order to close.

“Company” means the party named as such above until a successor replaces it and thereafter means the successor.

“Company Order” means a written order signed in the name of the Company by two Officers, one of whom must be the Company’s chief executive officer, chief financial officer or principal accounting officer.

Table of Contents

“Company Request” means a written request signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, a President or a Vice President, and by its Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, its Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania shall be principally administered, which office as of the date of this instrument is located at 500 Ross Street, 12th Floor, Pittsburgh, PA 15262, except that with respect to presentation of Securities for payment or for registration of transfer or exchange, such term shall mean the office or agency of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate agency business shall be conducted, which office at the date of this instrument is located at 240 Greenwich Street, New York, New York 10286; Attention: Corporate Trust Division—Corporate Finance Unit, or, in the case of any of such offices or agency, such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Company.

“Default” means any event which is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Depository” means, with respect to the Securities of any Series issuable or issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, the person designated as Depository for such Series by the Company, which Depository shall be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act; and if at any time there is more than one such person, “Depository” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Securities of such Series.

“Designated Senior Indebtedness” means any of our senior indebtedness that expressly provides that it is “designated senior indebtedness” for purposes of this Indenture (provided that the instrument, agreement or other document creating or evidencing such Senior Indebtedness may place limitations and conditions on the right of such Senior Indebtedness to exercise the rights of Designated Senior Indebtedness).

“Discount Security” means any Security that provides for an amount less than the stated principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

“Dollars” means the currency of The United States of America.

“ECU” means the European Currency Unit as determined by the Commission of the European Union.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Foreign Currency” means any currency or currency unit issued by a government other than the government of The United States of America.

“Foreign Government Obligations” means with respect to Securities of any Series that are denominated in a Foreign Currency, (i) direct obligations of the government that issued or caused to be issued such currency for the payment of which obligations its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a person controlled or supervised by or acting as an agency or instrumentality of such government the timely payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by such government, which, in either case under clauses (i) or (ii), are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof.

“Global Security” or “Global Securities” means a Security or Securities, as the case may be, in the form established pursuant to Section 2.2 evidencing all or part of a Series of Securities, issued to the Depository for such Series or its nominee, and registered in the name of such Depository or nominee.

“Holder” or “Securityholder” means a person in whose name a Security is registered or the holder of a Bearer Security.

Table of Contents

“indebtedness” means, with respect to any person, and without duplication, (a) all indebtedness, obligations and other liabilities (contingent or otherwise) of such person for borrowed money (including obligations of the Company in respect of overdrafts, foreign exchange contracts, currency exchange agreements, interest rate protection agreements, and any loans or advances from banks, whether or not evidenced by notes or similar instruments) or evidenced by bonds, debentures, notes or similar instruments (whether or not the recourse of the lender is to the whole of the assets of such person or to only a portion thereof) (other than any account payable or other accrued current liability or obligation incurred in the ordinary course of business in connection with the obtaining of materials or services), (b) all reimbursement obligations and other liabilities (contingent or otherwise) of such person with respect to letters of credit, bank guarantees or bankers’ acceptances, (c) all obligations and liabilities (contingent or otherwise) in respect of leases of such person required, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, to be accounted for as capitalized lease obligations on the balance sheet of such person and all obligations and liabilities, contingent or otherwise, as lessee under leases for facility equipment (and related assets leased together with such equipment) and under any lease or related document (including a purchase agreement, conditional sale or other title retention or synthetic lease agreement) in connection with the lease of real property or improvement thereon (or any personal property included as part of any such lease) which provides that such Person is contractually obligated to purchase or cause a third party to purchase the leased property or pay an agreed upon residual value of the leased property, including the obligations under such lease or related document to purchase or cause a third party to purchase such leased property (whether or not such lease transaction is characterized as an operating lease or a capitalized lease in accordance with GAAP) or pay an agreed upon residual value of the leased property to the lessor; (d) all obligations of such person (contingent or otherwise) with respect to an interest rate or other swap, cap or collar agreement or other similar instrument or agreement or foreign currency hedge, exchange, purchase or similar instrument or agreement, (e) all direct or indirect guaranties or similar agreements by such person in respect of, and obligations or liabilities (contingent or otherwise) of such person to purchase or otherwise acquire or otherwise assure a creditor against loss in respect of indebtedness, obligations or liabilities of another person of the kind described in clauses (a) through (d), (f) any indebtedness or other obligations described in clauses (a) through (e) secured by any mortgage, pledge, lien or other encumbrance existing on property which is owned or held by such person, regardless of whether the indebtedness or other obligation secured thereby shall have been assumed by such person and (g) any and all refinancings, replacements, deferrals, renewals, extensions and refundings of, or amendments, modifications or supplements to, any indebtedness, obligation or liability of the kind described in clauses (a) through (f).

“Indenture” means this Indenture as amended from time to time and shall include the form and terms of particular Series of Securities established as contemplated hereunder.

“interest” with respect to any Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security or installment of principal thereof, means the date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption, notice of option to elect repayment or otherwise.

“Officer” means the Chairman of the Board, any President, any Vice-President, the Treasurer, the Secretary, any Assistant Treasurer or any Assistant Secretary of the Company.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by two Officers, one of whom must be the Company’s principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of legal counsel who shall be acceptable to the Trustee. The counsel may be an employee of or counsel to the Company.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

Table of Contents

“principal” of a Security means the principal of the Security plus, when appropriate, the premium, if any, on, and any Additional Amounts in respect of, the Security.

“Representative” means the (a) indenture trustee or other trustee, agent or representative for any Senior Indebtedness or (b) with respect to any Senior Indebtedness that does not have any such trustee, agent or other representative, (i) in the case of such Senior Indebtedness issued pursuant to an agreement providing for voting arrangements as among the holders or owners of such Senior Indebtedness, any holder or owner of such Senior Indebtedness acting with the consent of the required persons necessary to bind such holders or owners of such Senior Indebtedness and (ii) in the case of all other such Senior Indebtedness, the holder or owner of such Senior Indebtedness.

“Responsible Officer” means, with respect to the Trustee, any officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Division—Corporate Finance Unit (or any successor division or unit) of the Trustee located at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture, and for the purposes of the penultimate paragraph of Section 1.3, Section 7.1(c)(ii) and the second sentence of Section 7.5 shall also include any other officer of the Trustee to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such officer’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“SEC” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Securities” means the debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company of any Series authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Senior Indebtedness” means the principal, premium, if any, interest, including any interest accruing after bankruptcy, and rent or termination payment on or other amounts due on our current or future Indebtedness, whether created, incurred, assumed, guaranteed or in effect guaranteed by us, including any deferrals, renewals, extensions, refundings, amendments, modifications or supplements to the above. However, Senior Indebtedness does not include: (i) Indebtedness that expressly provides that it shall not be senior in right of payment to the Securities or expressly provides that it is on the same basis or junior to the Securities; (ii) our indebtedness to any of our majority-owned subsidiaries; and (iii) the Securities.

“Series” or “Series of Securities” means each series of debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company created pursuant to Sections 2.1 and 2.2 hereof.

“Stated Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” of any specified Person means any corporation of which at least a majority of the outstanding stock having by the terms thereof ordinary voting power for the election of directors of such corporation (irrespective of whether or not at the time stock of any other class or classes of such corporation shall have or might have voting power by reason of the happening of any contingency) is at the time directly or indirectly owned by such Person, or by one or more other Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more other Subsidiaries.

“TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S. Code Sections 77aaa-77bbb) as in effect on the date of this Indenture; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “TIA” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that Series.

[Table of Contents](#)

“U.S. Government Obligations” means securities which are (i) direct obligations of The United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of The United States of America the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by The United States of America, and which in the case of (i) and (ii) are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such U.S. Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such U.S. Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt, provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the U.S. Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

Section 1.2 Other Definitions.

<u>TERM</u>	<u>DEFINED IN SECTION</u>
“Bankruptcy Law”	6.1
“Custodian”	6.1
“Event of Default”	6.1
“Legal Holiday”	10.7
“mandatory sinking fund payment”	11.1
“optional sinking fund payment”	11.1
“Paying Agent”	2.4
“Payment Blockage Notice”	12.2
“Registrar”	2.4
“Service Agent”	2.4
“successor Person”	5.1

Section 1.3 Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act.

Whenever this Indenture refers to a provision of the TIA, the provision is incorporated by reference in and made a part of this Indenture. The following TIA terms used in this Indenture have the following meanings:

“Commission” means the SEC.

“indenture securities” means the Securities. “indenture security holder” means a Securityholder.

“indenture to be qualified” means this Indenture.

“indenture trustee” or “institutional trustee” means the Trustee.

“obligor” on the indenture securities means the Company and any successor obligor upon the Securities.

All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined by the TIA, defined by TIA reference to another statute or defined by SEC rule under the TIA and not otherwise defined herein are used herein as so defined.

Section 1.4 Rules of Construction.

Unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) a term has the meaning assigned to it;
- (b) an accounting term not otherwise defined has the meaning assigned to it in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

[Table of Contents](#)

(c) references to “generally accepted accounting principles” shall mean generally accepted accounting principles in effect as of the time when and for the period as to which such accounting principles are to be applied;

(d) “or” is not exclusive;

(e) words in the singular include the plural, and in the plural include the singular;

(f) unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to an “Article,” a “Section” or an “Exhibit” refers to an Article, a Section or an Exhibit, as the case may be, of this Indenture;

(g) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;

(h) words importing any gender include the other genders; and

(i) provisions apply to successive events and transactions.

ARTICLE II

THE SECURITIES

Section 2.1 Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more Series. All Securities of a Series shall be identical except as may be set forth in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers’ Certificate detailing the adoption of the terms thereof pursuant to the authority granted under a Board Resolution. In the case of Securities of a Series to be issued from time to time, the Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture may provide for the method by which specified terms (such as interest rate, maturity date, record date or date from which interest shall accrue) are to be determined. Securities may differ between Series in respect of any matters, provided that all Series of Securities shall be equally and ratably entitled to the benefits of the Indenture but all Securities issued hereunder shall be subordinate and junior in right of payment, to the extent and in the manner set forth in Article XII, to all Senior Indebtedness of the Company.

Section 2.2 Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities.

At or prior to the issuance of any Securities within a Series, the following shall be established (as to the Series generally, in the case of Subsection 2.2.1 and either as to such Securities within the Series or as to the Series generally in the case of Subsections 2.2.2 through 2.2.22) by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers’ Certificate pursuant to authority granted under a Board Resolution:

2.2.1 the title of the Series (which shall distinguish the Securities of that particular Series from the Securities of any other Series);

2.2.2 the price or prices (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount thereof) at which the Securities of the Series will be issued;

2.2.3 any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the Series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the Series pursuant to Section 2.7, 2.8, 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6);

[Table of Contents](#)

2.2.4 the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the Series is payable;

2.2.5 the rate or rates (which may be fixed or variable) per annum or, if applicable, the method used to determine such rate or rates (including, but not limited to, any commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index) at which the Securities of the Series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest, if any, shall accrue, the date or dates on which such interest, if any, shall commence and be payable and any regular record date for the interest payable on any interest payment date;

2.2.6 the place or places where the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series shall be payable, or the method of such payment, if by wire transfer, mail or other means;

2.2.7 if applicable, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which the Securities of the Series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;

2.2.8 the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase the Securities of the Series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the Series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

2.2.9 the dates, if any, on which and the price or prices at which the Securities of the Series will be repurchased by the Company at the option of the Holders thereof and other detailed terms and provisions of such repurchase obligations;

2.2.10 if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the Series shall be issuable;

2.2.11 the forms of the Securities of the Series in bearer or fully registered form (and, if in fully registered form, whether the Securities will be issuable as Global Securities);

2.2.12 if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of the Securities of the Series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2;

2.2.13 the currency of denomination of the Securities of the Series, which may be Dollars or any Foreign Currency, including, but not limited to, the ECU, and if such currency of denomination is a composite currency other than the ECU, the agency or organization, if any, responsible for overseeing such composite currency;

2.2.14 the designation of the currency, currencies or currency units in which payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be made;

2.2.15 if payments of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series are to be made in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are denominated, the manner in which the exchange rate with respect to such payments will be determined;

2.2.16 the manner in which the amounts of payment of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be determined, if such amounts may be determined by reference to an index based on a currency or currencies or by reference to a commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index;

2.2.17 the provisions, if any, relating to any security provided for the Securities of the Series;

[Table of Contents](#)

2.2.18 if the holders of Securities of the Series may convert or exchange the Securities into or for securities of the Issuer or of other entities or other property, the period or periods within which, the rate or rates at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the Series may be converted or exchanged, in whole or in part;

2.2.19 any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the Series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 6.2;

2.2.20 any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Articles IV or V which applies to Securities of the Series;

2.2.21 any other terms of the Securities of the Series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, except as permitted by Section 9.1, but which may modify or delete any provision of this Indenture insofar as it applies to such Series); and

2.2.22 any depositories, interest rate calculation agents, exchange rate calculation agents or other agents with respect to Securities of such Series if other than those appointed herein.

All Securities of any one Series need not be issued at the same time and may be issued from time to time, consistent with the terms of this Indenture, if so provided by or pursuant to the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers' Certificate referred to above, and the authorized principal amount of any Series may not be increased to provide for issuances of additional Securities of such Series, unless otherwise provided in such Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers' Certificate.

Section 2.3 Execution and Authentication.

Two Officers shall sign the Securities for the Company by manual or facsimile signature.

If an Officer whose signature is on a Security no longer holds that office at the time the Security is authenticated, the Security shall nevertheless be valid.

A Security shall not be valid until authenticated by the manual signature of the Trustee or an authenticating agent. The signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security has been authenticated under this Indenture.

The Trustee shall at any time, and from time to time, authenticate Securities for original issue in the principal amount provided in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate, upon receipt by the Trustee of a Company Order. Such Company Order may authorize authentication and delivery pursuant to electronic instructions from the Company or its duly authorized agent or agents, which instructions shall be promptly confirmed in writing. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities of any Series outstanding at any time may not exceed any limit upon the maximum principal amount for such Series set forth in the Board

Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2, except as provided in Section 2.8.

Prior to the issuance of Securities of any Series, the Trustee shall have received and (subject to Section 7.2) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying on: (a) the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate establishing the form of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series and the terms of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series, (b) an Officers' Certificate complying with Section 10.4, and (c) an Opinion of Counsel complying with Section 10.4, and stating (i) that the form and terms of the Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture, and (ii) that such Securities, when authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any

Table of Contents

conditions specified therein, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms, except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights and by general principles of equity.

The Trustee shall have the right to decline to authenticate and deliver any Securities of such Series: (a) if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken; or (b) if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors or trustees, executive committee or a trust committee of or a committee of its Responsible Officers shall determine that such action would expose the Trustee to personal liability to Holders of any then outstanding Series of Securities.

The Trustee may appoint an authenticating agent acceptable to the Company to authenticate Securities. An authenticating agent may authenticate Securities whenever the Trustee may do so. Each reference in this Indenture to authentication by the Trustee includes authentication by such agent. An authenticating agent has the same rights as an Agent to deal with the Company or an Affiliate.

Section 2.4 Agents.

The Company shall maintain, with respect to each Series of Securities, at the place or places specified with respect to such Series pursuant to Section 2.2, an office or agency where Securities of such Series may be presented or surrendered for payment ("Paying Agent"), where Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange ("Registrar") and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served ("Service Agent"). The Registrar shall keep a register with respect to each Series of Securities and of their transfer and exchange. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the name and address, and any change in the name or address, of each Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the name and address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more co-registrars, additional paying agents or additional service agents and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligations to maintain a Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent in each place so specified pursuant to Section 2.2 for Securities of any Series for such purposes and provided further that there shall be only one registration book for a Series of Securities. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the name or address of any such co-registrar, additional paying agent or additional service agent. The term "Registrar" includes any co-registrar; the term "Paying Agent" includes any additional paying agent; and the term "Service Agent" includes any additional service agent.

The Company hereby appoints the Trustee the initial Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent for each Series unless another Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent, as the case may be, is appointed prior to the time Securities of that Series are first issued.

Section 2.5 Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust.

The Company shall require each Paying Agent other than the Trustee to agree in writing that the Paying Agent will hold in trust, for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities, or the Trustee, all money held by the Paying Agent for the payment of principal of or interest on the Series of Securities, and will notify the Trustee of any default by the Company in making any such payment. While any such default continues, the Trustee may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. The Company at any time may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. Upon payment over to the Trustee, the Paying Agent (if other than the Company or a Subsidiary) shall have no further liability for the money. If the Company or a Subsidiary acts as Paying Agent, it shall segregate and hold in a separate trust fund for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities all money held by it as Paying Agent.

Section 2.6 Securityholder Lists.

The Trustee shall preserve in as current a form as is reasonably practicable the most recent list available to it of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities and shall otherwise comply with TIA Section 312(a). If the Trustee is not the Registrar, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee at least ten days before each interest payment date and at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing a list, in such form and as of such date as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities.

Section 2.7 Transfer and Exchange.

Where Securities of a Series are presented to the Registrar or a co-registrar with a request to register a transfer or to exchange them for an equal principal amount of Securities of the same Series, the Registrar shall register the transfer or make the exchange if its requirements for such transactions are met. To permit registrations of transfers and exchanges, the Trustee shall authenticate Securities at the Registrar's request. No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange (except as otherwise expressly permitted herein), but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable in connection therewith (other than any such transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable upon exchanges pursuant to Sections 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6).

Neither the Company nor the Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, register the transfer of, or exchange Securities of any Series for the period beginning at the opening of business fifteen days immediately preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of that Series selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (b) to register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any Series selected, called or being called for redemption as a whole or the portion being redeemed of any such Securities selected, called or being called for redemption in part.

Section 2.8 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any Series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that Series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 2.9 Outstanding Securities.

The Securities outstanding at any time are all the Securities authenticated by the Trustee except for those canceled by it, those delivered to it for cancellation, those reductions in the interest on a Global Security effected by the Trustee in accordance with the provisions hereof and those described in this Section as not outstanding.

If a Security is replaced pursuant to Section 2.8, it ceases to be outstanding until the Trustee receives proof satisfactory to it that the replaced Security is held by a bona fide purchaser.

If the Paying Agent (other than the Company, a Subsidiary or an Affiliate of any thereof) holds on the Maturity of Securities of a Series money sufficient to pay such Securities payable on that date, then on and after that date such Securities of the Series cease to be outstanding and interest on them ceases to accrue.

A Security does not cease to be outstanding because the Company or an Affiliate holds the Security.

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the principal amount of a Discount Security that shall be deemed to be outstanding for such purposes shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of such determination upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

Section 2.10 Treasury Securities.

In determining whether the Holders of the required principal amount of Securities of a Series have concurred in any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver Securities of a Series owned by the Company or an Affiliate shall be disregarded, except that for the purposes of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in conclusively relying on any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver only Securities of a Series that the Trustee knows are so owned shall be so disregarded.

Section 2.11 Temporary Securities.

Until definitive Securities are ready for delivery, the Company may prepare and the Trustee shall authenticate temporary Securities upon a Company Order. Temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of definitive Securities but may have variations that the Company considers appropriate for temporary Securities. Without unreasonable delay, the Company shall prepare and the Trustee upon request shall authenticate definitive Securities of the same Series and date of maturity in exchange for temporary Securities. Until so exchanged, temporary securities shall have the same rights under this Indenture as the definitive Securities.

Section 2.12 Cancellation.

The Company at any time may deliver Securities to the Trustee for cancellation. The Registrar and the Paying Agent shall forward to the Trustee any Securities surrendered to them for registration of transfer, exchange or payment. The Trustee shall cancel all Securities surrendered for transfer, exchange, payment, replacement or cancellation and shall dispose of such canceled Securities (subject to the record retention requirement of the Exchange Act) in accordance with the Trustee's then standard provisions and, upon the written request of the Company, deliver a certificate of such disposition to the Company. The Company may not issue new Securities to replace Securities that it has paid or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, except as otherwise provided for in this Indenture.

Section 2.13 Defaulted Interest.

If the Company defaults in a payment of interest on a Series of Securities, it shall pay the defaulted interest, plus, to the extent permitted by law, any interest payable on the defaulted interest, to the Persons who are Securityholders of the Series on a subsequent special record date. The Company shall fix the record date and payment date. At least 30 days before the record date, the Company shall mail to the Trustee and to each Securityholder of the Series a notice that states the record date, the payment date and the amount of interest to be paid. The Company may pay defaulted interest in any other lawful manner.

Section 2.14 Global Securities.

2.14.1 Terms of Securities. A Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate shall establish whether the Securities of a Series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and the Depositary for such Global Security or Securities.

2.14.2 Transfer and Exchange. Notwithstanding any provisions to the contrary contained in Section 2.7 of the Indenture and in addition thereto, any Global Security shall be exchangeable pursuant to Section 2.7 of the Indenture for Securities registered in the names of Holders other than the Depositary for such Security or its nominee only if (i) such Depositary notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such Global Security or if at any time such Depositary ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and, in either case, the Company fails to appoint a successor Depositary within 90 days of such event, (ii) the Company executes and delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that such Global Security shall be so exchangeable or (iii) an Event of Default with respect to the Securities represented by such Global Security shall have happened and be continuing. Any Global Security that is exchangeable pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be exchangeable for Securities registered in such names as the Depositary shall direct in writing in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security with like tenor and terms.

Except as provided in this Section 2.14.2, a Global Security may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depositary with respect to such Global Security to a nominee of such Depositary, by a nominee of such Depositary to such Depositary or another nominee of such Depositary or by the Depositary or any such nominee to a successor Depositary or a nominee of such a successor Depositary.

2.14.3 Legend. Unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 2.2, any Global Security issued hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

“This Security is a Global Security within the meaning of the Indenture hereinafter referred to and is registered in the name of the Depositary or a nominee of the Depositary. This Security is exchangeable for Securities registered in the name of a Person other than the Depositary or its nominee only in the limited circumstances described in the Indenture, and may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depositary to a nominee of the Depositary, by a nominee of the Depositary to the Depositary or another nominee of the Depositary or by the Depositary or any such nominee to a successor Depositary or a nominee of such a successor Depositary.”

2.14.4 Acts of Holders. The Depositary, as a Holder, may appoint agents and otherwise authorize participants to give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which a Holder is entitled to give or take under the Indenture.

2.14.5 Payments. Notwithstanding the other provisions of this Indenture, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.2, payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on any Global Security shall be made to the Holder thereof.

2.14.6 Consents, Declaration and Directions. With respect to a Global Security, the Depositary may be treated by the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee as the absolute owner of the Global Security for all purposes whatsoever. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by the Depositary or impair, as between the Depositary and its agent members, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of a holder of any Note.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner in a Global Security, any Depository participant or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of the Depository or its nominee or of any Depository participant, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any Depository participant, beneficial owner or other Person (other than the Depository) of any notice (including any notice of redemption) or the payment of any amount, under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Securityholders and all payments to be made to Securityholders under the Securities and this Indenture shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered holders (which shall be the Depository or its nominee in the case of the Global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in the Global Security shall be exercised only through the Depository subject to the applicable procedures. The Trustee and each Agent shall be entitled to rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by the Depository with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners. The Trustee and each Agent shall be entitled to deal with the Depository, and any nominee thereof, that is the registered holder of any Global Security for all purposes of this Indenture relating to such Global Security (including the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest and additional amounts, if any, and the giving of instructions or directions by or to the owner or holder of a beneficial ownership interest in such Global Security) as the sole holder of such Global Security and shall have no obligations to the beneficial owners thereof. None of the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any responsibility or liability for any acts or omissions of the Depository with respect to such Global Security, for the records of any such depository, including records in respect of beneficial ownership interests in respect of any such Global Security, for any transactions between the Depository and any Depository participant or between or among the Depository, any such Depository participant and/or any holder or owner of a beneficial interest in such Global Security, or for any transfers of beneficial interests in any such Global Security.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, or any agent of the Company or the Trustee from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any Depository (or its nominee), as a Holder, with respect to such Global Security or shall impair, as between such Depository and owners of beneficial interests in such Global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such Depository (or its nominee) as Holder of such Global Security.

2.14.7 Trustee Protections. Each Holder of a Security agrees to indemnify the Company and the Trustee against any liability that may result from the transfer, exchange or assignment of such Holder's Security in violation of any provision of this Indenture and/or applicable United States Federal or state securities law.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent shall have any obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among Depository participants, members or beneficial owners of interests in any Global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof.

Neither the Trustee nor any Agent, nor any agent thereof, shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by the Depository.

Section 2.15 CUSIP Numbers.

The Company in issuing the Securities may use CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other elements of identification printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company will promptly notify the Trustee in writing of any change in the CUSIP, ISIN or other similar numbers.

ARTICLE III
REDEMPTION

Section 3.1 Notice to Trustee.

The Company may, with respect to any Series of Securities, reserve the right to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or may covenant to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or any part thereof prior to the Stated Maturity thereof at such time and on such terms as provided for in such Securities. If a Series of Securities is redeemable and the Company wants or is obligated to redeem prior to the Stated Maturity thereof all or part of the Series of Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, it shall notify the Trustee in writing of the redemption date and the principal amount of Series of Securities to be redeemed. The Company shall give the notice at least 45 days before the redemption date (or such shorter notice as may be acceptable to the Trustee).

Section 3.2 Selection of Securities to be Redeemed.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, if less than all the Securities of a Series are to be redeemed, the Notes shall be selected by lot, pro rata or by such other method that the Trustee deems fair and appropriate (provided that, in the case of Global Notes, the Depositary may select beneficial interests in Global Notes for redemption pursuant to its applicable procedures). The Notes shall be selected from Securities of the Series outstanding not previously called for redemption. Portions of Notes may be selected for redemption of the principal of Securities of the Series that have denominations larger than \$1,000. Securities of the Series and portions of them selected shall be in amounts of \$1,000 or whole multiples of \$1,000 or, with respect to Securities of any Series issuable in other denominations pursuant to Section 2.2.10, the minimum principal denomination for each Series and integral multiples thereof. Provisions of this Indenture that apply to Securities of a Series called for redemption also apply to portions of Securities of that Series called for redemption.

Section 3.3 Notice of Redemption.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, at least 30 days but not more than 90 days before a redemption date, the Company shall, by mail or, in the case of Global Securities, in accordance with the rules of the applicable Depositary, give a notice of redemption to each Holder whose Securities are to be redeemed and if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish on one occasion a notice in an Authorized Newspaper.

The notice shall identify the Securities of the Series to be redeemed (including the CUSIP numbers thereof) and shall state:

- (a) the redemption date;
- (b) the redemption price;
- (c) the name and address of the Paying Agent;
- (d) that Securities of the Series called for redemption must be surrendered to the Paying Agent to collect the redemption price;
- (e) that, unless the Company defaults in making such redemption payment or the Paying agent is prohibited from making such payment pursuant to the terms of this Indenture, interest on Securities of the Series called for redemption ceases to accrue on and after the redemption date

[Table of Contents](#)

(f) list the CUSIP number of the Securities and state that no representation is made as to the correctness or accuracy of the CUSIP number, if any, listed in such notice or printed on the Securities; and

(g) any other information as may be required by the terms of the particular Series or the Securities of a Series being redeemed.

At the Company's written request and provision of the form of notice of redemption, the Trustee shall give the notice of redemption in the Company's name and at the Company's expense.

Section 3.4 Effect of Notice of Redemption.

Once notice of redemption is mailed or published as provided in Section 3.3, Securities of a Series called for redemption become due and payable on the redemption date and at the redemption price. A notice of redemption may not be conditional. Upon surrender to the Paying Agent, such Securities shall be paid at the redemption price plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

Section 3.5 Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or before the redemption date, the Company shall deposit with the Paying Agent money sufficient to pay the redemption price of and accrued interest, if any, on all Securities to be redeemed on that date.

Section 3.6 Securities Redeemed in Part.

Upon surrender of a Security that is redeemed in part, the Trustee shall authenticate for the Holder a new Security of the same Series and the same maturity equal in principal amount to the unredeemed portion of the Security surrendered.

ARTICLE IV

COVENANTS

Section 4.1 Payment of Principal and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of that Series in accordance with the terms of such Securities and this Indenture.

Section 4.2 SEC Reports.

The Company shall file with the Trustee within 15 days after it files them with the SEC copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports which the Company is required to file with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act. The Company will cause quarterly and annual reports which it makes available to its stockholders to be mailed to the Holders of each Series of Securities. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of TIA Section 314(a).

Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute actual or constructive knowledge or notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

Section 4.3 Compliance Certificate.

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 105 days after the end of each fiscal year of the Company, a brief certificate signed by the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company, as to the signer's knowledge of the Company's compliance with all conditions and covenants contained in this Indenture (determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided herein).

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company will, so long as any of the Securities are outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, forthwith upon, and in any event within 15 calendar days after, becoming aware of any Default or Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate specifying such Default or Event of Default and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

Section 4.4 Corporate Existence.

Subject to Article V, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence and the rights (charter and statutory), licenses and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right, license or franchise if the Board of Directors shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Subsidiaries taken as a whole and that the loss thereof is not adverse in any material respect to the Holders.

Section 4.5 Taxes.

The Company shall pay prior to delinquency all taxes, assessments and governmental levies, except as contested in good faith and by appropriate proceedings.

ARTICLE V

SUCCESSORS

Section 5.1 When Company May Merge, Etc.

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge with or into any other [corporation][Person] or convey, transfer or lease its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to, any [corporation][Person] (a "successor Person"), unless:

either:

(1) the Company shall be the surviving or continuing [corporation][Person] or

(2) (a) the successor Person formed by or surviving such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance, transfer or lease the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be a [corporation][Person] organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America or any State or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by a supplemental indenture hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(b) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and

(c) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance, transfer or lease and such supplemental indenture, if any, comply with this Article and that all the proposed transaction and such supplemental indenture comply with this Indenture and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 5.2 Successor Corporation Substituted.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any sale, lease, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company in accordance with Section 5.1, the successor corporation formed by such consolidation or into or with which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person has been named as the Company herein; provided, however, that the predecessor Company in the case of a conveyance, transfer or lease shall not be released from its obligations under the Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE VI

DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.1 Events of Default.

“Event of Default,” wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any Series, means any one of the following events, unless in the establishing Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers’ Certificate, it is provided that such Series shall not have the benefit of said Event of Default:

(a) default in the payment of any interest on any Security of that Series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 90 days (unless the entire amount of such payment is deposited by the Company with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent for payment of such interest prior to the expiration of such period of 90 days); or

(b) default in the payment of the principal of any Security of that Series at its Maturity; or

(c) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due in respect of any Security of that Series; or

(d) default in the performance or breach of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture (other than a covenant or warranty that has been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of Series of Securities other than that Series), which default continues uncured for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or

(e) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:

(i) commences a voluntary case,

(ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case,

(iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property,

(iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, or

(v) generally is unable to pay its debts as the same become due; or

(f) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law that:

(i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case,

(ii) appoints a Custodian for the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or

(iii) orders the liquidation of the Company and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days; or

(g) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that Series, which is specified in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, in accordance with Section 2.2.19.

The term "Bankruptcy Law" means title 11, U.S. Code or any similar Federal or State law for the relief of debtors. The term "Custodian" means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

Section 6.2 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series at the time outstanding occurs and is continuing (other than an Event of Default referred to in Section 6.1(e) or (f)) then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities of that Series are Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such Securities) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all of the Securities of that Series to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(e) or (f) shall occur, the principal amount (or specified amount) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all outstanding Securities shall ipso facto become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or any Holder.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to any Series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(a) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:

(i) all overdue interest, if any, on all Securities of that Series,

(ii) the principal of any Securities of that Series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(iii) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon any overdue principal and overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(iv) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and

(b) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that Series, other than the non-payment of the principal of Securities of that Series which have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 6.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.3 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if:

- (a) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 90 days, or
- (b) default is made in the payment of principal of any Security at the Maturity thereof, or
- (c) default is made in the deposit of any sinking fund payment when and as due by the terms of a Security,

then, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal and interest and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, interest on any overdue principal or any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or deemed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to any Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 6.4 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

(a) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, fees, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

(b) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same, and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, fees, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 7.7.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding.

Section 6.5 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 6.6 Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article or, after an Event of Default, any money or other property distributable in respect of the Company's obligations under this Indenture shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money or property on account of principal or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

First: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee (including any predecessor trustee) under Section 7.7; and

Second: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and interest, respectively; and

Third: To the Company or as a court of competent jurisdiction in a final non-appealable decision may direct.

Section 6.7 Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any Series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

(a) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that Series;

(b) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;

(c) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity and/or security satisfactory to it in its sole discretion against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

(d) the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity and/or security has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(e) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 90-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all such Holders (it being understood that the Trustee does not have an affirmative duty to ascertain whether or not such actions or forbearances are unduly prejudicial to such Holders).

Section 6.8 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on such Security on the Stated Maturity or Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the redemption date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 6.9 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 6.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in Section 2.8, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 6.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 6.12 Control by Holders.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that

- (a) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or unduly prejudicial to the rights of other Holders (it being understood that the Trustee shall be under no obligation to determine whether such direction is prejudicial to the rights of other Holders),
- (b) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction, and

(c) subject to the provisions of Section 6.1, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability.

Section 6.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.

Subject to Section 6.2, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such Series waive any past Default hereunder with respect to such Series and its consequences, except a Default in the payment of the principal of or interest on any Security of such Series (provided, however, that the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series may rescind an acceleration and its consequences, including any related payment default that resulted from such acceleration). Upon any such waiver, such Default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.14 Undertaking for Costs.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by its acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Holder, or group of Holders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any Series, or to any suit instituted by any Holder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of or interest on any Security on or after the Stated Maturity or Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the redemption date).

ARTICLE VII

TRUSTEE

Section 7.1 Duties of Trustee.

(a) In case an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs.

(b) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:

(i) the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts, statements, opinions or conclusions stated therein).

(c) The Trustee may not be relieved from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this paragraph does not limit the effect of paragraphs (b) or (g) of this Section;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it is proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts; and

(iii) The Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it with respect to Securities of any Series in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such Series.

(d) Every provision of this Indenture that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to this Section.

(e) The Trustee may refuse to perform any duty or exercise any right or power unless it receives indemnity and/or security reasonably satisfactory to it against any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense.

(f) The Trustee shall not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Company. Money held in trust by the Trustee need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

(g) No provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

(h) The Agents shall be entitled to the protections and immunities as are set forth in this Article with respect to the Trustee.

Section 7.2 Rights of Trustee.

Subject to the provisions of Section 601:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties.

(b) Before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officers' Certificate and/or an Opinion of Counsel. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel.

(c) The Trustee may act through agents or attorneys and shall not be responsible for the misconduct or negligence of any agent appointed with due care. No Depository shall be deemed an agent of the Trustee and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any act or omission by any Depository.

(d) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes, suffers or omits to take in good faith which it believes to be authorized or within its rights or powers.

Table of Contents

(e) The Trustee may consult with counsel of its selection and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(f) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security and/or indemnity satisfactory to it in its sole discretion against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction.

(g) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, at reasonable times during normal business hours, personally or by agent or attorney at the sole cost of the Company and shall incur no liability or additional liability of any kind by reason of such inquiry or investigation.

(h) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder.

(i) In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action.

(j) The Trustee may request that the Company deliver a certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

(k) Any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution.

(l) The permissive right of the Trustee to take or refrain from taking action hereunder shall not be construed as a duty.

(m) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, the Trustee shall be entitled to make a deduction or withholding from any payment which it makes under this Indenture for or on account of any present or future taxes, duties or charges if and to the extent so required by any applicable law and any current or future regulations or agreements thereunder or official interpretations thereof or any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto or by virtue of the relevant holder failing to satisfy any certification or other requirements in respect of the Securities, in which event the Trustee shall make such payment after such withholding or deduction has been made and shall account to the relevant authorities for the amount so withheld or deducted and shall have no obligation to gross up any payment hereunder or pay any additional amount as a result of such withholding tax.

In addition, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice or be charged with knowledge of any Default or Event of Default unless written notice of such Default or Event of Default from the Company or any Holders is received by a Responsible Officer of Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office in the manner set forth in this Indenture, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture. Delivery of reports, information and documents to the

Trustee under Section 4.2 is for informational purposes only and the information and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute actual or constructive knowledge or notice of any information contained therein, or determinable from information contained therein including the Company's compliance with any of their covenants thereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on an Officers' Certificate).

Section 7.3 Individual Rights of Trustee.

The Trustee in its individual or any other capacity may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Company or an Affiliate with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee. Any Agent may do the same with like rights. The Trustee is also subject to Sections 7.10 and 7.11.

Section 7.4 Trustee's Disclaimer.

The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities, it shall not be accountable for the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities, and it shall not be responsible for any recital or statement contained herein and in the Securities other than its certificates of authentication, and the Trustee or any Agent assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee shall not be responsible to make any calculation with respect to any matter under this Indenture. The Trustee shall have no duty to monitor or investigate the Company's compliance with or the breach of, or cause to be performed or observed, any representation, warranty, or covenant, or agreement of any Person, other than the Trustee, made in this Indenture.

Section 7.5 Notice of Defaults.

If a Default or Event of Default occurs and is continuing with respect to the Securities of any Series and if it is known to the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder of the Securities of that Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper, notice of a Default or Event of Default within 90 days after it occurs or, if later, after the Trustee has knowledge of such Default or Event of Default. Except in the case of a Default or Event of Default in payment of principal of or interest on any Security of any Series, the Trustee may withhold the notice if and so long as its corporate trust committee or a committee of its Responsible Officers in good faith determines that withholding the notice is in the interests of Securityholders of that Series.

Section 7.6 Reports by Trustee to Holders.

Within 60 days after May 15 in each year commencing May 15, , the Trustee shall transmit to all Securityholders, and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish in an Authorized Newspaper, a brief report dated as of such May 15, in accordance with, and to the extent required under, TIA Section 313.

A copy of each report at the time of its mailing to Securityholders of any Series shall be filed with the SEC and each stock exchange on which the Securities of that Series are listed. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee when Securities of any Series are listed on any stock exchange.

Section 7.7 Compensation and Indemnity.

The Company shall pay to the Trustee from time to time such compensation for its services as shall be agreed from time to time in writing. The Trustee's compensation shall not be limited by any law on compensation of a trustee of an express trust. The Company shall reimburse the Trustee upon request for all reasonable disbursements, advances and expenses incurred by the Trustee, including the reasonable compensation and expenses of the Trustee's agents and counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ.

The Company shall indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee (including the cost of defending itself) for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense, including fees and expenses of counsel, including taxes (other than taxes based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred by them except as set forth in the next paragraph , arising out of or in connection with this Indenture, the Securities of any Series, the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the

costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, or any Holder or any other Person) or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder, or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section. The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any claim for which it may seek indemnity; *provided*, however, that the Trustee shall not incur any liability if it fails to so notify and any failure by the Trustee to so notify the Company will not relieve the Company of its obligations hereunder. The Company shall defend the claim and the Trustee shall cooperate in the defense. The Trustee may have separate counsel and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. The Company need not pay for any settlement made without its consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. This indemnification shall apply to officers, directors, employees, shareholders and agents of the Trustee.

The Company need not reimburse any expense or indemnify against any loss, liability, damage, claim or expense incurred by the Trustee determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to have been through its own gross negligence or willful misconduct.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any Series upon all money, property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on particular Securities of that Series.

In addition to, but without prejudice to its other rights under this Indenture, when the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Sections 6.1(e) or (f), the expenses (including the reasonable charges and expenses of its counsel) and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any Bankruptcy Law.

“Trustee” for purposes of this Section shall include any predecessor Trustee; provided, however, that the negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith of any Trustee hereunder shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee hereunder.

The obligations of the Company in this Section 7.7 shall survive the termination for any reason of this Indenture, the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or resignation or removal of the Trustee.

Section 7.8 Replacement of Trustee.

A resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor Trustee shall become effective only upon the successor Trustee’s acceptance of appointment as provided in this Section.

The Trustee may resign with respect to the Securities of one or more Series by so notifying the Company. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any Series may remove the Trustee with respect to that Series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company in writing. The Company may remove the Trustee with respect to Securities of one or more Series if:

- (a) the Trustee fails to comply with Section 7.10;
- (b) the Trustee is adjudged a bankrupt or an insolvent or an order for relief is entered with respect to the Trustee under any Bankruptcy Law;
- (c) a Custodian or public officer takes charge of the Trustee or its property; or
- (d) the Trustee becomes incapable of acting.

If the Trustee resigns or is removed or if a vacancy exists in the office of Trustee for any reason, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee. Within one year after the successor Trustee takes office, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding Securities may appoint a successor Trustee to replace the successor Trustee appointed by the Company.

[Table of Contents](#)

If a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any one or more Series does not take office within 30 days after the retiring Trustee resigns or is removed, the retiring Trustee, the Company or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Securities of the applicable Series may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

If the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any one or more Series fails to comply with Section 7.10, any Securityholder of the applicable Series may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor Trustee.

A successor Trustee shall deliver a written acceptance of its appointment to the retiring Trustee and to the Company. Immediately after that, the retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges and all other amounts payable to it hereunder, transfer all property held by it as Trustee to the successor Trustee subject to the lien provided for in Section 7.7, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective, and the successor Trustee shall have all the rights, powers and duties of the Trustee with respect to each Series of Securities for which it is acting as Trustee under this Indenture. A successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to each Securityholder of each such Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish such notice on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper. Notwithstanding replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 7.8, the Company's obligations under, and the lien provided for in, Section 7.7 hereof shall continue for the benefit of the retiring trustee with respect to expenses and liabilities incurred by it prior to such replacement.

Section 7.9 Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.

If the Trustee consolidates with, merges or converts into, or transfers all or substantially all of its corporate trust business to, another Person, the successor Person without any further act shall be the successor Trustee.

Section 7.10 Eligibility; Disqualification.

This Indenture shall always have a Trustee who satisfies the requirements of TIA Section 310(a) (1), (2) and (5). The Trustee shall always have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$25,000,000 as set forth in its most recent published annual report of condition. The Trustee shall comply with TIA Section 310(b); provided, however, that there shall be excluded from the operation of Section 310(b)(i) of the TIA any Securities of any other series or any indenture or indentures under which other securities or certificates of interest or participation in other securities of the Company are outstanding if the requirements for such exclusion set forth in Section 310(b)(i) of the TIA are met. If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the TIA, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the TIA and this Indenture.

Section 7.11 Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.

The Trustee is subject to TIA Section 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA Section 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent indicated.

ARTICLE VIII

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

Section 8.1 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

This Indenture shall upon Company Order cease to be of further effect (except as hereinafter provided in this Section 8.1), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, when:

(a) either:

(i) all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than Securities that have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that have been replaced or paid) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(ii) all such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation:

(1) have become due and payable, or

(2) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(3) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, or

(4) are deemed paid and discharged pursuant to Section 8.3, as applicable;

and the Company, in the case of (1), (2) or (3) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust an amount sufficient, without reinvestment, for the purpose of paying and discharging the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable on or prior to the date of such deposit) or to the Stated Maturity or redemption date, as the case may be;

(b) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(c) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 7.7, and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to clause (a) of this Section, the provisions of Sections 2.4, 2.7, 2.8, 8.1, 8.2 and 8.5 shall survive.

Section 8.2 Application of Trust Funds; Indemnification.

(a) Subject to the provisions of Section 8.5, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.1, all money and U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.3 or 8.4 and all money received by the Trustee in respect of U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.3 or 8.4, shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with or received by the Trustee or to make mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments as contemplated by Sections 8.3 or 8.4.

(b) The Company shall pay and shall indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Sections 8.3 or 8.4 or the interest and principal received in respect of such obligations other than any payable by or on behalf of Holders.

(c) The Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations or money held by it as provided in Sections 8.3 or 8.4 which are then in excess of the amount thereof which then would have been required to

be deposited for the purpose for which such U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations or money were deposited or received. This provision shall not authorize the sale by the Trustee of any U.S. Government Obligations or Foreign Government Obligations held under this Indenture.

Section 8.3 Legal Defeasance of Securities of any Series.

Unless this Section 8.3 is otherwise specified, pursuant to Section 2.2.21, to be inapplicable to Securities of any Series, the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness on all the outstanding Securities of such Series on the 91st day after the date of the deposit referred to in subparagraph (d) hereof, and the provisions of this Indenture, as it relates to such outstanding Securities of such Series, shall no longer be in effect (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall, at Company Request, execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except as to:

(a) the rights of Holders of Securities of such Series to receive, from the trust funds described in subparagraph (d) hereof, (i) payment of the principal of and each installment of principal of and interest on the outstanding Securities of such Series on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest and (ii) the benefit of any mandatory sinking fund payments applicable to the Securities of such Series on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and the Securities of such Series;

(b) the provisions of Sections 2.4, 2.7, 2.8, 8.2, 8.3 and 8.5; and

(c) the rights, powers, trust and immunities of the Trustee hereunder; provided that, the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(d) the Company shall have deposited or caused to be deposited irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for and dedicated solely to the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (i) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in Dollars, cash in Dollars (or such other money or currencies as shall then be legal tender in the United States) and/or U.S. Government Obligations, or (ii) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in a Foreign Currency (other than a composite currency), money and/or Foreign Government Obligations, which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof, in accordance with their terms, will provide (and without reinvestment and assuming no tax liability will be imposed on such Trustee), not later than one Business Day before the due date of any payment of money, an amount in cash[and/or U.S. Government Obligations and/or Foreign Government Obligations, as applicable], sufficient, without reinvestment, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge each installment of principal (including mandatory sinking fund or analogous payments) of and interest, if any, on all the Securities of such Series on the dates such installments of interest or principal are due;

(e) such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound;

(f) no Default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such Series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or during the period ending on the 91st day after such date;

(g) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that (i) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (ii) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of the Securities of such Series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit, defeasance and discharge and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit, defeasance and discharge had not occurred;

(h) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of the Securities of such Series over any other creditors of the company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any other creditors of the Company;

(i) such deposit shall not result in the trust arising from such deposit constituting an investment company (as defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended), or such trust shall be qualified under such Act or exempt from regulation thereunder; and

(j) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section have been complied with.

Section 8.4 Covenant Defeasance.

Unless this Section 8.4 is otherwise specified pursuant to Section 2.2.21 to be inapplicable to Securities of any Series, on and after the 91st day after the date of the deposit referred to in subparagraph (a) hereof, the Company may omit to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth under Sections 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, and 5.1 as well as any additional covenants contained in a supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series of Securities or a Board Resolution or an Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2.21 (and the failure to comply with any such covenants shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default under Section 6.1) and the occurrence of any event described in clause (e) of Section 6.1 shall not constitute a Default or Event of Default hereunder, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that the following conditions shall have been satisfied:

(a) With reference to this Section 8.4, the Company has deposited or caused to be irrevocably deposited (except as provided in Section 8.2(c)) with the Trustee as trust funds in trust, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities (i) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in Dollars, cash in Dollars (or such other money or currencies as shall then be legal tender in the United States) and/or U.S. Government Obligations, or (ii) in the case of Securities of such Series denominated in a Foreign Currency (other than a composite currency), money and/or Foreign Government Obligations, which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof, in accordance with their terms, will provide (and without reinvestment and assuming no tax liability will be imposed on such Trustee), not later than one day before the due date of any payment of money, an amount in cash, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent certified public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay principal and interest, if any, on and any mandatory sinking fund in respect of the Securities of such Series on the dates such installments of interest or principal are due;

(b) Such deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound;

(c) No Default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such Series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or during the period ending on the 91st day after such date;

(d) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel confirming that Holders of the Securities of such Series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such deposit and defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such deposit and defeasance had not occurred;

(e) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of the Securities of such Series over any other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any other creditors of the Company; and

(f) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the defeasance contemplated by this Section have been complied with.

Section 8.5 Repayment to Company.

The Trustee and the Paying Agent shall pay to the Company upon request any money held by them for the payment of principal and interest that remains unclaimed for two years or such other shorter period set forth in applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law. After that, Securityholders entitled to the money must look to the Company for payment as general creditors unless an applicable abandoned property law designates another Person.

Section 8.6 Reinstatement.

If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money or U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with Sections 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be, by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company's obligations under this Indenture and the Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money or U.S. Government Obligations in accordance with Section 8.1, 8.3 or 8.4, as the case may be; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of, premium, if any, or interest on any Securities because of reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money or U.S. Government Obligations held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE IX

AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS

Section 9.1 Without Consent of Holders.

The Company and the Trustee may amend this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series without the consent of any Securityholder:

- (a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, mistake or inconsistency;
- (b) to comply with Article V;
- (c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (d) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;
- (e) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of Securities of any Series as permitted by this Indenture;
- (f) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more Series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee; or

(g) to comply with requirements of the SEC in order to effect or maintain the qualification of this Indenture under the TIA.

After any amendment under this Article becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Securityholders a notice briefly describing such amendment; provided, however, that the failure to give such notice to all Securityholders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment under this Article.

Section 9.2 With Consent of Holders.

The Company and the Trustee may enter into a supplemental indenture with the written consent of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such supplemental indenture (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series), for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Securityholders of each such Series. Except as provided in Section 6.13, the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such waiver by notice to the Trustee (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series) may waive compliance by the Company with any provision of this Indenture or the Securities with respect to such Series.

Without the consent of each Securityholder affected, an amendment or waiver may not:

- (a) change the amount of Securities whose Holders must consent to an amendment, supplement or waiver;
- (b) reduce the rate of or extend the time for payment of interest (including default interest) on any Security;
- (c) reduce the principal or change the Stated Maturity of any Security or reduce the amount of, or postpone the date fixed for, the payment of any sinking fund or analogous obligation;
- (d) reduce the principal amount of Discount Securities payable upon acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- (e) waive a Default or Event of Default in the payment of the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security (except a rescission of acceleration of the Securities of any Series by the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
- (f) make the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security payable in any currency other than that stated in the Security;
- (g) make any change in Sections 6.8, 6.13, 9.2, 10.15 or 10.16; or
- (h) waive a redemption payment with respect to any Security or change any of the provisions with respect to the redemption of any Securities.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Holders of Securities under this Section 9.2 to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture or waiver, but it shall be sufficient if such consent approves the substance thereof. After a supplemental indenture or waiver under this Section becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Holders of Securities affected thereby and, if any Bearer Securities affected thereby are outstanding, publish on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper, a notice briefly describing the supplemental indenture or waiver. Any failure by the Company to mail or publish such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture or waiver.

[Table of Contents](#)

After any amendment under this Article becomes effective, the Company shall mail to the Securityholders a notice briefly describing such amendment; provided, however, that the failure to give such notice to all Securityholders, or any defect therein, shall not impair or affect the validity of any amendment under this Article.

Section 9.3 [Reserved.]

Section 9.4 Compliance with Trust Indenture Act.

Every amendment to this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series shall be set forth in a supplemental indenture hereto that complies with the TIA as then in effect.

Section 9.5 Revocation and Effect of Consents.

Until an amendment or waiver becomes effective, a consent to it by a Holder of a Security is a continuing consent by the Holder and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security, even if notation of the consent is not made on any Security. However, any such Holder or subsequent Holder may revoke the consent as to its Security or portion of a Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the date the amendment or waiver becomes effective.

Any amendment or waiver once effective shall bind every Securityholder of each Series affected by such amendment or waiver unless it is of the type described in any of clauses (a) through (g) of Section 9.3. In that case, the amendment or waiver shall bind each Holder of a Security who has consented to it and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security.

Section 9.6 Notation on or Exchange of Securities.

The Trustee may place an appropriate notation about an amendment or waiver on any Security of any Series thereafter authenticated. The Company in exchange for Securities of that Series may issue and the Trustee shall authenticate upon request new Securities of that Series that reflect the amendment or waiver.

Section 9.7 Trustee Protected.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to Section 7.1) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that such supplemental indenture is enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, subject to then customary exceptions. The Trustee shall sign all supplemental indentures, except that the Trustee need not sign any supplemental indenture that adversely affects its rights.

ARTICLE X

MISCELLANEOUS

Section 10.1 Trust Indenture Act Controls.

If any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies, or conflicts with another provision which is required or deemed to be included in this Indenture by the TIA, such required or deemed provision shall control.

Section 10.2 Notices.

Any notice or communication by the Company or the Trustee to the other is duly given if in writing and delivered in person or mailed by first-class mail:

Table of Contents

if to the Company:

electroCore, Inc.
150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, NJ, 07920
Attention: Brian Posner, Chief Financial Officer

if to the Trustee:

The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A.
500 Ross Street, 12th Floor
Pittsburgh, PA 15262
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration – Corporate Finance Unit

The Company or the Trustee by notice to the other may designate additional or different addresses for subsequent notices or communications.

If a notice or communication is mailed or delivered in the manner provided above within the time prescribed, it is duly given, whether or not the addressee receives it, except in the case of notices or communications given to the Trustee, which shall be effective only upon actual receipt by the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office.

Any notice or communication to a Securityholder shall be mailed by first-class mail to its address shown on the register kept by the Registrar and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, published in an Authorized Newspaper. Failure to mail a notice or communication to a Securityholder of any Series or any defect in it shall not affect its sufficiency with respect to other Securityholders of that or any other Series.

If a notice or communication is mailed or published in the manner provided above, within the time prescribed, it is duly given, whether or not the Securityholder receives it.

If the Company mails a notice or communication to Securityholders, it shall mail a copy to the Trustee and each Agent at the same time.

“Electronic Means” shall mean the following communications methods: S.W.I.F.T., e-mail, facsimile transmission, secure electronic transmission containing applicable authorization codes, passwords and/or authentication keys issued by the Trustee, or another method or system specified by the Trustee as available for use in connection with its services hereunder.

The Trustee shall have the right to accept and act upon instructions, including funds transfer instructions (“Instructions”) given pursuant to this Indenture and delivered using Electronic Means; provided, however, that the Company shall provide to the Trustee an incumbency certificate listing officers with the authority to provide such Instructions (“Authorized Officers”) and containing specimen signatures of such Authorized Officers, which incumbency certificate shall be amended by the Company whenever a person is to be added or deleted from the listing. If the Company elects to give the Trustee Instructions using Electronic Means and the Trustee in its discretion elects to act upon such Instructions, the Trustee’s understanding of such Instructions shall be deemed controlling. The Company understands and agrees that the Trustee cannot determine the identity of the actual sender of such Instructions and that the Trustee shall conclusively presume that directions that purport to have been sent by an Authorized Officer listed on the incumbency certificate provided to the Trustee have been sent by such Authorized Officer. The Company shall be responsible for ensuring that only Authorized Officers transmit such Instructions to the Trustee and that the Company and all Authorized Officers are solely responsible to safeguard the use and confidentiality of applicable user and authorization codes, passwords and/or authentication keys upon receipt by the Company. The Trustee shall have no duty or obligation to verify or confirm that the person who sent such instructions or directions is, in fact, a person authorized to give instructions or directions on behalf of the Company; and the Trustee shall not be liable for any losses, liabilities, costs or expenses arising directly or indirectly from the Trustee’s reliance upon and compliance with such Instructions notwithstanding such directions conflict or

are inconsistent with a subsequent written instruction. The Company agrees: (i) to assume all risks arising out of the use of Electronic Means to submit Instructions to the Trustee, including without limitation the risk of the Trustee acting on unauthorized Instructions, and the risk of interception and misuse by third parties; (ii) that it is fully informed of the protections and risks associated with the various methods of transmitting Instructions to the Trustee and that there may be more secure methods of transmitting Instructions than the method(s) selected by the Company; (iii) that the security procedures (if any) to be followed in connection with its transmission of Instructions provide to it a commercially reasonable degree of protection in light of its particular needs and circumstances; and (iv) to notify the Trustee immediately upon learning of any compromise or unauthorized use of the security procedures.

Section 10.3 Communication by Holders with Other Holders.

Securityholders of any Series may communicate pursuant to TIA Section 312(b) with other Securityholders of that Series or any other Series with respect to their rights under this Indenture or the Securities of that Series or all Series. The Company, the Trustee, the Registrar and anyone else shall have the protection of TIA Section 312(c).

Section 10.4 Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent.

Upon any request or application by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee:

(a) an Officers' Certificate stating that, in the opinion of the signers, all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with; and

(b) an Opinion of Counsel stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, all such conditions precedent have been complied with.

Section 10.5 Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion.

Each certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than a certificate provided pursuant to TIA Section 314(a) (4)) shall include:

(a) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition;

(b) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(c) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, such Person has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable such Person to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(d) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 10.6 Rules by Trustee and Agents.

The Trustee may make reasonable rules for action by or a meeting of Securityholders of one or more Series. Any Agent may make reasonable rules and set reasonable requirements for its functions.

Section 10.7 Legal Holidays.

Unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture for a particular Series, a "Legal Holiday" is any day that is not a Business Day. If a payment date is a Legal Holiday at a place of payment, payment may be made at that place on the next succeeding day that is not a Legal Holiday, and no interest shall accrue for the intervening period.

Section 10.8 No Recourse Against Others.

A director, officer, employee or stockholder, as such, of the Company shall not have any liability for any obligations of the Company under the Securities or the Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of or by reason of such obligations or their creation. Each Securityholder by accepting a Security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 10.9 Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed shall be deemed to be an original and all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and of signature pages by facsimile or electronic (*i.e.*, “pdf” or “tif”) transmission shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture as to the parties hereto and may be used in lieu of the original Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile or electronic (*i.e.*, “pdf” or “tif”) transmission shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

Section 10.10 Governing Laws; Waiver of Jury Trial; Submission to Jurisdiction.

THIS INDENTURE AND THE SECURITIES SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK APPLICABLE TO AGREEMENTS MADE AND TO BE PERFORMED IN SUCH STATE. EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE, AND EACH HOLDER OF A SECURITY BY ITS ACCEPTANCE THEREOF, HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE NOTES OR THE TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

THE COMPANY IRREVOCABLY CONSENTS AND SUBMITS, FOR ITSELF AND IN RESPECT OF ANY OF ITS ASSETS OR PROPERTY, TO THE NONEXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF ANY COURT OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK OR ANY UNITED STATES FEDERAL COURT SITTING, IN EACH CASE, IN THE BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, THE CITY OF NEW YORK, NEW YORK, UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, AND ANY APPELLATE COURT FROM ANY THEREOF IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING THAT MAY BE BROUGHT IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE OR THE SECURITIES, AND WAIVES ANY IMMUNITY FROM THE JURISDICTION OF SUCH COURTS. THE COMPANY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY OBJECTION TO ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING THAT MAY BE BROUGHT IN SUCH COURTS WHETHER ON THE GROUNDS OF VENUE, RESIDENCE OR DOMICILE OR ON THE GROUND THAT ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING HAS BEEN BROUGHT IN AN INCONVENIENT FORUM. THE COMPANY AGREES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT THAT IT LAWFULLY MAY DO SO, THAT FINAL JUDGMENT IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BROUGHT IN SUCH A COURT SHALL BE CONCLUSIVE AND BINDING UPON THE COMPANY, AND WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY OBJECTION TO THE ENFORCEMENT BY ANY COMPETENT COURT IN THE COMPANY’S JURISDICTION OF ORGANIZATION OF JUDGMENTS VALIDLY OBTAINED IN ANY SUCH COURT IN NEW YORK ON THE BASIS OF SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING.

Section 10.11 No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements.

This Indenture may not be used to interpret another indenture, loan or debt agreement of the Company or a Subsidiary. Any such indenture, loan or debt agreement may not be used to interpret this Indenture.

Section 10.12 Successors.

[Table of Contents](#)

All agreements of the Company in this Indenture and the Securities shall bind its successor. All agreements of the Trustee in this Indenture shall bind its successor.

Section 10.13 Severability.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 10.14 Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.

The Table of Contents, Cross Reference Table, and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Indenture have been inserted for convenience of reference only, are not to be considered a part hereof, and shall in no way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 10.15 Force Majeure.

In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts which are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

ARTICLE XI

SINKING FUNDS

Section 11.1 Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of the Securities of a Series, except as otherwise permitted or required by any form of Security of such Series issued pursuant to this Indenture.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of the Securities of any Series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment” and any other amount provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 11.2. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any Series as provided for by the terms of the Securities of such Series.

Section 11.2 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of any Series to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities (1) deliver outstanding Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable (other than any of such Securities previously called for mandatory sinking fund redemption) and (2) apply as credit Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable and which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Series of Securities (except pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund) or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments or other optional redemptions pursuant to the terms of such Securities, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received by the Trustee, together with an Officers' Certificate with respect thereto, not later than 15 days prior to the date on which the process of selecting Securities for redemption begins, and shall be credited for such purpose at the price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. If as a result of the delivery or credit of Securities in lieu of cash payments pursuant to this Section

11.2, the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed in order to exhaust the aforesaid cash payment shall be less than \$100,000, the Trustee need not call Securities of such Series for redemption, except upon receipt of a Company Order that such action be taken, and such cash payment shall be held by the Trustee or a Paying Agent and applied to the next succeeding sinking fund payment, provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall from time to time upon receipt of a Company Order pay over and deliver to the Company any cash payment so being held by the Trustee or such Paying Agent upon delivery by the Company to the Trustee of Securities of that Series purchased by the Company having an unpaid principal amount equal to the cash payment required to be released to the Company.

Section 11.3 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 45 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate in respect of a particular Series of Securities) prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that Series pursuant to the terms of that Series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting of Securities of that Series pursuant to Section 11.2, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 30 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture in respect of a particular Series of Securities) before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.2 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.3. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6.

ARTICLE XII

SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

Section 12.1 Agreement of Subordination.

The Company covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Securities issued hereunder by its acceptance thereof likewise covenants and agrees, that all Securities shall be issued subject to the provisions of this Article XII; and each Person holding any Security, whether upon original issue or upon transfer, assignment or exchange thereof, accepts and agrees to be bound by such provisions.

The payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on all Securities (including, but not limited to, the redemption price with respect to the Securities called for redemption in accordance with Article III as provided in the Indenture) issued hereunder shall, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, be subordinated and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, whether outstanding at the date of this Indenture or thereafter incurred.

No provision of this Article XII shall prevent the occurrence of any default or Event of Default hereunder.

Section 12.2 Payments to Holders.

No payment shall be made with respect to the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities (including, but not limited to, the redemption price with respect to the Securities to be called for redemption in accordance with Article III as provided in the Indenture), except payments and distributions made by the Trustee as permitted by the first or second paragraph of Section 12.5, if:

(i) a default in the payment of principal, premium, interest, rent or other obligations due on any Senior Indebtedness occurs and is continuing (or, in the case of Senior Indebtedness for which there is a period of grace, in the event of such a default that continues beyond the period of grace, if any, specified in the instrument or lease evidencing such Senior Indebtedness), unless and until such default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist; or

Table of Contents

(ii) a default, other than a payment default, on a Designated Senior Indebtedness occurs and is continuing that then permits holders of such Designated Senior Indebtedness to accelerate its maturity and the Trustee receives a notice of the default (a "Payment Blockage Notice") from a Representative or the Company.

If the Trustee receives any Payment Blockage Notice pursuant to clause (ii) above, no subsequent Payment Blockage Notice shall be effective for purposes of this Section unless and until (a) at least 365 days shall have elapsed since the initial effectiveness of the immediately prior Payment Blockage Notice, and (b) all scheduled payments of principal, premium, if any, and interest on the Securities that have come due have been paid in full in cash. No nonpayment default that existed or was continuing on the date of delivery of any Payment Blockage Notice to the Trustee shall be, or be made, the basis for a subsequent Payment Blockage Notice.

The Company may and shall resume payments on and distributions in respect of the Securities upon the earlier of:

- (1) the date upon which the default is cured or waived or ceases to exist, or
- (2) in the case of a default referred to in clause (ii) above, 179 days pass after notice is received if the maturity of such Designated Senior Indebtedness has not been accelerated, unless this Article XII otherwise prohibits the payment or distribution at the time of such payment or distribution.

Upon any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to creditors upon any dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary or in bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or other proceedings, all amounts due or to become due upon all Senior Indebtedness shall first be paid in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, or payment thereof in accordance with its terms provided for in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, before any payment is made on account of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Securities (except payments made pursuant to Article VI from monies, securities or other property deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to commencement of proceedings for such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization); and upon any such dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of the Company or bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or other proceeding, any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled, except for the provision of this Article XII, shall (except as aforesaid) be paid by the Company or by any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, or by the Holders of the Securities or by the Trustee under this Indenture if received by them or it, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness (pro rata to such holders on the basis of the respective amounts of Senior Indebtedness held by such holders, or as otherwise required by law or a court order) or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness in full, in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Indebtedness, before any payment or distribution or provision therefor is made to the Holders of the Securities or to the Trustee.

For purposes of this Article XII, the words, "cash, property or securities" shall not be deemed to include shares of stock of the Company as reorganized or readjusted, or securities of the Company or any other corporation provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment, the payment of which is subordinated at least to the extent provided in this Article XII with respect to the Securities to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness which may at the time be outstanding; provided that (i) the Senior Indebtedness is assumed by the new corporation, if any, resulting from any reorganization or readjustment, and (ii) the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness (other than leases which are not assumed by the Company or the new corporation, as the case may be) are not, without the consent of such holders, altered by such reorganization or readjustment. The consolidation of the Company with, or the merger of the Company into, another corporation or the liquidation or dissolution of the Company following the conveyance

or transfer of its property as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to another corporation upon the terms and conditions provided for in Article V shall not be deemed a dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization for the purposes of this Section 12.2 if such other corporation shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions stated in Article V.

In the event of the acceleration of the Securities because of an Event of Default, no payment or distribution shall be made to the Trustee or any Holder of Securities in respect of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Securities (including, but not limited to, the redemption price with respect to the Securities called for redemption in accordance with Article 3 as provided in the Indenture), except payments and distributions made by the Trustee as permitted by the first or second paragraph of Section 12.5, until all Senior Indebtedness has been paid in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of Senior Indebtedness or such acceleration is rescinded in accordance with the terms of this Indenture. If payment of the Securities is accelerated because of an Event of Default, the Company shall promptly notify holders of Senior Indebtedness of the acceleration at the address set forth in the notice from the Agent (or successor agent) to the Trustee as being the address to which the Trustee should send its notice pursuant to this Section 12.2, unless there are no payment obligations of the Company thereunder and all obligations thereunder to extend credit have been terminated or expired.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing provisions, any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities (including, without limitation, by way of setoff or otherwise), prohibited by the foregoing, shall be received by the Trustee or the Holders of the Securities before all Senior Indebtedness is paid in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, or provision is made for such payment thereof in accordance with its terms in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, such payment or distribution shall be held in trust for the benefit of and shall be paid over or delivered to the holders of Senior Indebtedness or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, as calculated by the Company, for application to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness in full in cash or other payment satisfactory to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

Nothing in Section 12.1 or 12.2 shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Sections 6.6 and 7.7. This Section 12.2 shall be subject to the further provisions of Section 12.5.

Section 12.3 Subrogation of Securities.

Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, the rights of the Holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the extent of the payments or distributions made to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII (equally and ratably with the holders of all indebtedness of the Company which by its express terms is subordinated to other indebtedness of the Company to substantially the same extent as the Securities are subordinated and is entitled to like rights of subrogation) to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Company applicable to the Senior Indebtedness until the principal, premium, if any, and interest on the Securities shall be paid in full; and, for the purposes of such subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of any cash, property or securities to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article XII, and no payment over pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, to or for the benefit of the holders of Senior Indebtedness by Holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as between the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or on account of the Senior Indebtedness; and no payments or distributions of cash, property or securities to or for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities pursuant to the subrogation provisions of this Article XII, which would otherwise have been paid to the holders of Senior Indebtedness shall be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or for the account of the Securities. It is understood that the provisions of this Article XII are and are intended solely for the purposes of defining the relative rights of the Holders of the Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness, on the other hand.

Nothing contained in this Article XII or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall impair, as among the Company, its creditors other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of

the Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay to the Holders of the Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or is intended to or shall affect the relative rights of the Holders of the Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of the Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or therein prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article XII of the holders of Senior Indebtedness in respect of cash, property or securities of the Company received upon the exercise of any such remedy.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article XII, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, and the Holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree made by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such bankruptcy, dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization proceedings are pending, or a certificate of the receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of the Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of the Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article XII.

Section 12.4 Authorization to Effect Subordination.

Each Holder of a Security by the holder's acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on the holder's behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination as provided in this Article XII and appoints the Trustee to act as the holder's attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes. If the Trustee does not file a proper proof of claim or proof of debt in the form required in any proceeding referred to in Section 6.3 hereof at least 30 days before the expiration of the time to file such claim, the holders of any Senior Indebtedness or their representatives are hereby authorized to file an appropriate claim for and on behalf of the Holders of the Securities.

Section 12.5 Notice to Trustee.

The Company shall give prompt written notice in the form of an Officers' Certificate to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office and to any paying agent of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies, securities or other property to or by the Trustee or any paying agent in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article XII or any other provision of this Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies, securities or other property to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, or the taking of any other action by the Trustee, unless and until a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof at the Corporate Trust Office from the Company (in the form of an Officers' Certificate) or a Representative or a Holder of any Security or a holder or holders of Senior Indebtedness or from any trustee thereof; and before the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; provided that if on a date not fewer than three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such monies, securities or other property may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on any Security) the Trustee shall not have received, with respect to such monies, securities or other property the notice provided for in this Section 12.5, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such monies, securities or other property and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it on or after such three Business Day period.

Notwithstanding anything in this Article XII to the contrary, nothing shall prevent any payment by the Trustee to the Holders of monies, securities or other property deposited with it pursuant to Section 8.1, and any such payment shall not be subject to the provisions of Section 12.1 or 12.2.

The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Representative or a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness (or a

trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such notice has been given by a Representative or a holder of Senior Indebtedness or a trustee on behalf of any such holder or holders. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article XII, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article XII, and if such evidence is not furnished the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

Section 12.6 Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness.

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article XII in respect of any Senior Indebtedness at any time held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness, and nothing in Section 7.11 or elsewhere in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article XII, and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Indebtedness and, subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, the Trustee shall not be liable to any holder of Senior Indebtedness if it shall pay over or deliver to Holders of Securities, the Company or any other Person money or assets to which any holder of Senior Indebtedness shall be entitled by virtue of this Article XII or otherwise.

Section 12.7 No Impairment of Subordination.

No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Indebtedness to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof which any such holder may have or otherwise be charged with.

Section 12.8 Article Applicable to Paying Agents.

If at any time any Paying Agent other than the Trustee shall have been appointed by the Company and be then acting hereunder, the term "Trustee" as used in this Article shall (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including such Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if such Paying Agent were named in this Article in addition to or in place of the Trustee; provided, however, that the first paragraph of Section 12.5 shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or such Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

Section 12.9 Senior Indebtedness Entitled to Rely.

The holders of Senior Indebtedness (including, without limitation, Designated Senior Indebtedness) shall have the right to rely upon this Article XII, and no amendment or modification of the provisions contained herein shall diminish the rights of such holders unless such holders shall have agreed in writing thereto.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

ELECTROCORE, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST
COMPANY, N.A., as Trustee**

By: _____
Name:
Title:

July 15, 2019

electroCore, Inc.
150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, New Jersey 07920

Re: Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to electroCore, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the preparation and filing of a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement") with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), relating to the registration under the Securities Act and the proposed issuance and sale from time to time by the Company of up to an aggregate initial offering amount of \$50,000,000 of the following securities (each a "Company Security" and collectively, or in any combination, the "Company Securities"):

- (i) shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$.001 per share (the "Common Stock");
- (ii) one or more classes or series of shares of the Company's preferred stock, par value \$.001 per share (the "Preferred Stock");
- (iii) senior debt securities, in one or more series (the "Senior Debt Securities");
- (iv) subordinated debt securities, in one or more series (the "Subordinated Debt Securities" and together with the Senior Debt Securities, the "Debt Securities");
- (v) warrants representing the rights to purchase shares of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, or Debt Securities (the "Warrants");
- (vi) subscription rights to purchase shares of Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the "Subscription Rights"); and
- (vii) units comprised of one or more of the Company Securities in one or more series and in any combination (the "Units").

For the purposes of this opinion letter, the Company Securities shall be deemed to include any additional Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities, Warrants, Subscription Rights and Units that may be registered pursuant to any registration statement that the Company may hereafter file with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act.

This opinion letter is being furnished to the Company in accordance with the requirements of Item 601(b)(5) of Regulation S-K. The opinions set forth herein are limited to applicable laws as in effect on the date hereof.

The Company Securities may be issued and sold by the Company from time to time on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to applicable provisions of Rule 415 under the Securities Act, in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined in light of market conditions at the time of sale, and as set forth in the Registration Statement, any amendment thereto, the prospectus contained therein (the "Base Prospectus") and any supplements to the Prospectus (each, together with the Base Prospectus, a "Prospectus"). We are basing this opinion letter on our understanding that, prior to issuing any Company Securities in connection with the Registration Statement, the Company will advise us in writing of the terms thereof and other information material thereto, will afford us an opportunity to review the operative documents pursuant to which such Company Securities are to be issued (including the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the applicable

supplement to the Prospectus, as then in effect) and will file such supplement or amendment to this opinion letter (if any) as we may reasonably consider necessary or appropriate with respect to such Company Securities. However, we undertake no responsibility to monitor the Company's future compliance with applicable laws, rules or regulations of the Commission or other governmental body.

In connection with rendering this opinion, we have examined originals, certified copies or copies otherwise identified as being true copies of the following:

- (a) the Registration Statement;
- (b) the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company (the "Certificate of Incorporation");
- (c) the Bylaws of the Company (the "Bylaws");
- (d) corporate proceedings of the Company relating to its proposed issuance of the Company Securities; and
- (e) such other instruments and documents as we have deemed relevant or necessary in connection with our opinions set forth herein.

Unless otherwise provided in any Prospectus relating to a particular series of Debt Securities, (i) the Senior Debt Securities will be issued pursuant to the indenture (the "Senior Indenture") to be dated on or about the first issuance of the Senior Debt Securities thereunder, by and between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. as trustee (the "Trustee"), the form of which is filed as Exhibit 4.1 to the Registration Statement, and (ii) the Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued pursuant to the indenture (the "Subordinated Indenture") to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of the Subordinated Debt Securities thereunder, by and between the Company and the Trustee, the form of which is filed as Exhibit 4.2 to the Registration Statement. Any Debt Securities may be convertible into shares of Common Stock or other Company Securities. The Company Securities are to be sold pursuant to a purchase, underwriting or similar agreement in substantially the form to be filed under a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Warrants will be issued under one or more warrant agreements (each, a "Warrant Agreement"). The Subscription Rights will be issued under one or more subscription rights agreements (each a "Subscription Rights Agreement"). The Units will be issued under one or more unit purchase agreements (each a "Unit Purchase Agreement").

In making the aforesaid examinations, we have assumed the genuineness and authenticity of all documents examined by us and all signatures therein and the conformity to originals of all copies of all documents examined by us. We have also assumed that the corporate records furnished to us by the Company include all corporate proceedings taken by it to date.

Based on and subject to the assumptions, qualifications and limitations set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

(1) With respect to shares of Common Stock, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve an issuance of shares of Common Stock, and certificates representing the shares of Common Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Common Stock shall have been properly issued), either (i) in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board of Directors"), upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Common Stock) provided for in such definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as applicable, or (ii) upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any other Company Security in accordance with the terms of such Company Security or the instrument governing such Company Security providing for the conversion, exchange or exercise as approved by the Board of Directors, for the consideration therefor set forth in the applicable agreement and approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Common Stock, such shares of Common Stock, including the shares of Common Stock that form a part of any Units, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

(2) With respect to shares of any series of Preferred Stock, when all necessary corporate action of the

Company has been taken to approve an issuance of shares of Preferred Stock and the terms of the shares of such series, including the adoption of a certificate of designation or amendment to the Articles of Incorporation fixing and determining the terms of such Preferred Stock conforming to the Delaware General Corporation Law, the filing of a certificate or amendment, as applicable, with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, the payment in full of any filing fees attendant thereto, and the due reservation of any Common Stock and Preferred Stock for issuance, and certificates representing the shares of the series of Preferred Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered, either (i) in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors, upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Preferred Stock) provided for in such definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as applicable, or (ii) upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any other Company Security in accordance with the terms of such Company Security or the instrument governing such Company Security providing for the conversion, exchange or exercise as approved by the Board of Directors, for the consideration approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Preferred Stock, the shares of such series of Preferred Stock, including the shares of Preferred Stock that form a part of any Units, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

(3) When (i) the Registration Statement has become effective under the Securities Act and (ii) with respect to Debt Securities to be issued under either the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, when (A) the Trustee is qualified to act as Trustee under the Senior Indenture or Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, (B) the Trustee has duly executed and delivered the Senior Indenture or Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, (C) the Senior Indenture or Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, has been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company to the Trustee, (D) the Senior Indenture or Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, has been duly qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, (E) the Board of Directors and any officers of the Company to whom such authority has been delegated by the Board of Directors has taken all necessary corporate action to approve the issuance and terms of a particular issue of such Debt Securities, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, and (F) such Debt Securities have been duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the provisions of (i) the Senior Indenture or Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, and (ii) the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein, then such Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms (subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and subject to general principles of equity, regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law).

(4) With respect to Warrants to be issued under a Warrant Agreement, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve the issuance and terms of such Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, the Warrant Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company, and such Warrants have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the Warrant Agreement and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors, upon payment (or delivery) of the consideration therefor provided for therein, such Warrants, including the Warrants that form a part of any Units, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(5) With respect to Subscription Rights to be issued under a Subscription Rights Agreement, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve the issuance and terms of such Subscription Rights, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, the Subscription Rights Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company, and such Subscription Rights have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the Subscription Rights Agreement and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors of the Company, upon payment (or delivery) of the consideration therefor provided for therein, such Subscription Rights, including the Subscription Rights that form a part of any Units, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(6) With respect to the Units, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve and establish the terms of the Units and to authorize and approve the issuance of the Company Securities comprising the Units, the terms of the offering and related matters, the Unit Purchase Agreement has been duly authorized, validly executed and delivered by the parties thereto, and the Units and/or the Company Securities comprising the Units have been duly executed and delivered in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by

the Board of Directors, upon payment of the consideration provided therefor in the definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement as applicable and approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the aggregate par value of any Common Stock and/or Preferred Stock included in the Units, the Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

Our opinions are subject to the effect of federal and state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance and other laws relating to or affecting the rights of secured or unsecured creditors generally (or affecting the rights of only creditors of specific types of debtors), with respect to which we express no opinion.

Our opinions are subject to the effect of general principals of equity, whether applied by a court of law or equity, including, without limitation, concepts of materiality, good faith and fair dealing and upon the availability of injunctive relief or other equitable remedies, and the application of principles of equity (regardless of whether enforcement is considered in proceedings at law or in equity).

We express no opinion as to the laws of any jurisdiction other than (i) the corporate laws of the State of Delaware (including the Delaware General Corporation Law and applicable provisions of the Delaware constitution, but excluding local laws), (ii) with respect to opinion paragraphs 3 through 6, the laws of the State of New York, and (iii) the federal laws of the United States of America. We express no opinion to the extent that any other laws are applicable to the subject matter hereof and express no opinion and provide no assurance as to compliance with any federal or state securities law, rule or regulation.

We hereby consent to the use of our opinion as herein set forth as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the use of our name under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus forming a part of the Registration Statement. We further consent to the incorporation by reference of this opinion into any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act with respect to additional Company Securities. We do not, by giving any such consent, admit that we are within the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Act.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Dentons US LLP

Dentons US LLP

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors
electroCore, Inc.:

We consent to the use of our report incorporated herein by reference and to the reference to our firm under the heading "Experts" in the prospectus.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Short Hills, New Jersey
July 15, 2019

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM T-1

**STATEMENT OF ELIGIBILITY
UNDER THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939 OF A
CORPORATION DESIGNATED TO ACT AS TRUSTEE**

- CHECK IF AN APPLICATION TO DETERMINE ELIGIBILITY OF A TRUSTEE PURSUANT TO SECTION 305(b)(2)**

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST
COMPANY, N.A.**

(Exact name of trustee as specified in its charter)

N/A
(State of incorporation
if not a U.S. national bank)

95-3571558
(I.R.S. employer
identification no.)

400 South Hope Street, Suite 500
Los Angeles, California
(Address of principal executive offices)

90071
(Zip code)

Legal Department
The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A.
240 Greenwich Street
New York, NY 10286
(212) 635-1270
(Name, address and telephone number of agent for service)

ELECTROCORE, INC.
(Exact name of obligor as specified in charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

20-3454976
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)

150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, New Jersey
(Address of principal executive offices)

07920
(Zip code)

Senior Debt Securities
(Title of the indenture securities)

Item 1. General information.

Furnish the following information as to the trustee:

- (a) Name and address of each examining or supervising authority to which it is subject.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Address</u>
Comptroller of the Currency – United States Department of the Treasury Federal Reserve Bank Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	Washington, D.C. 20219 San Francisco, California 94105 Washington, D.C. 20429

- (b) Whether it is authorized to exercise corporate trust powers.

Yes.

Item 2. Affiliations with Obligor.

If the obligor is an affiliate of the trustee, describe each such affiliation.

None.

Item 16. List of Exhibits.

Exhibits identified in parentheses below, on file with the Commission, are incorporated herein by reference as an exhibit hereto, pursuant to Rule 7a-29 under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the “Act”) and 17 C.F.R. 229.10(d).

1. A copy of the articles of association of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (Exhibit 1 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10)
2. A copy of certificate of authority of the trustee to commence business. (Exhibit 2 to Form T-1 filed with Registration Statement No. 333-121948).
3. A copy of the authorization of the trustee to exercise corporate trust powers. (Exhibit 3 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
4. A copy of the existing by-laws of the trustee. (Exhibit 4 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
5. Not applicable.
6. The consent of the trustee required by Section 321(b) of the Act. (Exhibit 6 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
7. A copy of the latest report of condition of the Trustee published pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority.
8. Not applicable.
9. Not applicable.

SIGNATURE

Pursuant to the requirements of the Act, the trustee, The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., a banking association organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, has duly caused this statement of eligibility to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, all in the City of Chicago, and State of Illinois, on the 15th day of July, 2019.

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON
TRUST COMPANY, N.A.**

By: /s/ Lawrence M. Kusch

Name: Lawrence M. Kusch

Title: Vice President

Consolidated Report of Condition of
THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.
of 400 South Hope Street, Suite 500, Los Angeles, CA 90071

At the close of business March 31, 2019, published in accordance with Federal regulatory authority instructions.

	Dollar amounts in thousands
ASSETS	
Cash and balances due from depository institutions:	
Noninterest-bearing balances and currency and coin	815
Interest-bearing balances	176,287
Securities:	
Held-to-maturity securities	0
Available-for-sale securities	199,729
Equity securities with readily determinable fair values not held for trading	NR
Federal funds sold and securities purchased under agreements to resell:	
Federal funds sold	0
Securities purchased under agreements to resell	0
Loans and lease financing receivables:	
Loans and leases held for sale	0
Loans and leases, held for investment	0
LESS: Allowance for loan and lease losses	0
Loans and leases held for investment, net of allowance	0
Trading assets	0
Premises and fixed assets (including capitalized leases)	26,457
Other real estate owned	0
Investments in unconsolidated subsidiaries and associated companies	0
Direct and indirect investments in real estate ventures	0
Intangible assets	858,559
Other assets	99,990
Total assets	<u>\$ 1,361,837</u>
LIABILITIES	
Deposits:	
In domestic offices	4,130
Noninterest-bearing	4,130
Interest-bearing	0
Not applicable	
Federal funds purchased and securities sold under agreements to repurchase:	

Federal funds purchased	0
Securities sold under agreements to repurchase	0
Trading liabilities	0
Other borrowed money:	
(includes mortgage indebtedness and obligations under capitalized leases)	20,947
Not applicable	
Not applicable	
Subordinated notes and debentures	0
Other liabilities	221,915
Total liabilities	246,992
Not applicable	
<u>EQUITY CAPITAL</u>	
Perpetual preferred stock and related surplus	0
Common stock	1,000
Surplus (exclude all surplus related to preferred stock)	323,719
Not available	
Retained earnings	790,896
Accumulated other comprehensive income	-770
Other equity capital components	0
Not available	
Total bank equity capital	1,114,845
Noncontrolling (minority) interests in consolidated subsidiaries	0
Total equity capital	<u>1,114,845</u>
Total liabilities and equity capital	<u><u>1,361,837</u></u>

I, Matthew J. McNulty, CFO of the above-named bank do hereby declare that the Reports of Condition and Income (including the supporting schedules) for this report date have been prepared in conformance with the instructions issued by the appropriate Federal regulatory authority and are true to the best of my knowledge and belief.

Matthew J. McNulty CFO

We, the undersigned directors (trustees), attest to the correctness of the Report of Condition (including the supporting schedules) for this report date and declare that it has been examined by us and to the best of our knowledge and belief has been prepared in conformance with the instructions issued by the appropriate Federal regulatory authority and is true and correct.

Antonio I. Portuondo, President
Michael P. Scott, Managing Director Directors (Trustees)
Kevin P. Caffrey, Managing Director

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM T-1

**STATEMENT OF ELIGIBILITY
UNDER THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939 OF A
CORPORATION DESIGNATED TO ACT AS TRUSTEE**

- CHECK IF AN APPLICATION TO DETERMINE ELIGIBILITY OF A TRUSTEE PURSUANT TO SECTION 305(b)(2)

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST
COMPANY, N.A.**

(Exact name of trustee as specified in its charter)

N/A
(State of incorporation
if not a U.S. national bank)

400 South Hope Street, Suite 500
Los Angeles, California
(Address of principal executive offices)

95-3571558
(I.R.S. employer
identification no.)

90071
(Zip code)

Legal Department
The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A.
240 Greenwich Street
New York, NY 10286
(212) 635-1270
(Name, address and telephone number of agent for service)

ELECTROCORE, INC.
(Exact name of obligor as specified in charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

150 Allen Road, Suite 201
Basking Ridge, New Jersey
(Address of principal executive offices)

20-3454976
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)

07920
(Zip code)

Subordinated Debt Securities
(Title of the indenture securities)

Item 1. General information.

Furnish the following information as to the trustee:

- (a) Name and address of each examining or supervising authority to which it is subject.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Address</u>
Comptroller of the Currency – United States Department of the Treasury	Washington, D.C. 20219
Federal Reserve Bank	San Francisco, California 94105
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	Washington, D.C. 20429

- (b) Whether it is authorized to exercise corporate trust powers.

Yes.

Item 2. Affiliations with Obligor.

If the obligor is an affiliate of the trustee, describe each such affiliation.

None.

Item 16. List of Exhibits.

Exhibits identified in parentheses below, on file with the Commission, are incorporated herein by reference as an exhibit hereto, pursuant to Rule 7a-29 under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the “Act”) and 17 C.F.R. 229.10(d).

1. A copy of the articles of association of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (Exhibit 1 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10)
2. A copy of certificate of authority of the trustee to commence business. (Exhibit 2 to Form T-1 filed with Registration Statement No. 333-121948).
3. A copy of the authorization of the trustee to exercise corporate trust powers. (Exhibit 3 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
4. A copy of the existing by-laws of the trustee. (Exhibit 4 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
5. Not applicable.
6. The consent of the trustee required by Section 321(b) of the Act. (Exhibit 6 to Form T-1 filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Act in connection with Registration Statement No. 333-135006-10).
7. A copy of the latest report of condition of the Trustee published pursuant to law or to the requirements of its supervising or examining authority.
8. Not applicable.
9. Not applicable.

SIGNATURE

Pursuant to the requirements of the Act, the trustee, The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., a banking association organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, has duly caused this statement of eligibility to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, all in the City of Chicago, and State of Illinois, on the 15th day of July, 2019.

**THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON
TRUST COMPANY, N.A.**

By: /s/ Lawrence M. Kusch

Name: Lawrence M. Kusch

Title: Vice President

Consolidated Report of Condition of
THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY, N.A.
of 400 South Hope Street, Suite 500, Los Angeles, CA 90071

At the close of business March 31, 2019, published in accordance with Federal regulatory authority instructions.

	<u>Dollar amounts in thousands</u>
<u>ASSETS</u>	
Cash and balances due from depository institutions:	
Noninterest-bearing balances and currency and coin	815
Interest-bearing balances	176,287
Securities:	
Held-to-maturity securities	0
Available-for-sale securities	199,729
Equity securities with readily determinable fair values not held for trading	NR
Federal funds sold and securities purchased under agreements to resell:	
Federal funds sold	0
Securities purchased under agreements to resell	0
Loans and lease financing receivables:	
Loans and leases held for sale	0
Loans and leases, held for investment	0
LESS: Allowance for loan and lease losses	0
Loans and leases held for investment, net of allowance	0
Trading assets	0
Premises and fixed assets (including capitalized leases)	26,457
Other real estate owned	0
Investments in unconsolidated subsidiaries and associated companies	0
Direct and indirect investments in real estate ventures	0
Intangible assets	858,559
Other assets	99,990
Total assets	<u>\$ 1,361,837</u>
<u>LIABILITIES</u>	
Deposits:	
In domestic offices	4,130
Noninterest-bearing	4,130
Interest-bearing	0
Not applicable	
Federal funds purchased and securities sold under agreements to repurchase:	

Federal funds purchased	0
Securities sold under agreements to repurchase	0
Trading liabilities	0
Other borrowed money:	
(includes mortgage indebtedness and obligations under capitalized leases)	20,947
Not applicable	
Not applicable	
Subordinated notes and debentures	0
Other liabilities	221,915
Total liabilities	246,992
Not applicable	
<u>EQUITY CAPITAL</u>	
Perpetual preferred stock and related surplus	0
Common stock	1,000
Surplus (exclude all surplus related to preferred stock)	323,719
Not available	
Retained earnings	790,896
Accumulated other comprehensive income	-770
Other equity capital components	0
Not available	
Total bank equity capital	1,114,845
Noncontrolling (minority) interests in consolidated subsidiaries	0
Total equity capital	<u>1,114,845</u>
Total liabilities and equity capital	<u><u>1,361,837</u></u>

I, Matthew J. McNulty, CFO of the above-named bank do hereby declare that the Reports of Condition and Income (including the supporting schedules) for this report date have been prepared in conformance with the instructions issued by the appropriate Federal regulatory authority and are true to the best of my knowledge and belief.

Matthew J. McNulty CFO

We, the undersigned directors (trustees), attest to the correctness of the Report of Condition (including the supporting schedules) for this report date and declare that it has been examined by us and to the best of our knowledge and belief has been prepared in conformance with the instructions issued by the appropriate Federal regulatory authority and is true and correct.

Antonio I. Portuondo, President
Michael P. Scott, Managing Director Directors (Trustees)
Kevin P. Caffrey, Managing Director